

Human Behavior

RETURN TO SOURCE

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

Nonfederal government personnel wanting a copy of this document must use the purchasing instructions on the inside cover.



program materials. Specifically, a TRAMAN includes a rate training manual (RTM), officer text (OT), single subject training manual (SSTM), or modular single or multiple subject training manual (MODULE); and a NRTC includes nonresident career course (NRCC), officer correspondence course (OCC), enlisted correspondence course (ECC) or combination thereof.

Although the words "he," "him," and "his" are used sparingly in this manual to enhance communication, they are not intended to be gender driven nor to affront or discriminate against anyone reading this text.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

Nonfederal government personnel wanting a copy of this document must write to Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402 OR Commanding Officer, Naval Publications and Forms Center, 5801 Tabor Avenue, Philadelphia, PA 19120-5099, Attention: Cash Sales, for price and availability.

PREFACE

This Training Manual (TRAMAN) and Nonresident Training Course (NRTC) form a self-study package that will enable the enrollees to gain information which may help them to become better leaders and, in some cases, to fulfill the requirements of their rating.

Designed for individual study and not for formal classroom instruction, the TRAMAN provides subject matter and situations that relate directly to concepts of leadership and management in the Navy. The NRTC provides the usual way of satisfying requirements for completing the TRAMAN. The set of assignments in the NRTC includes learning objectives and supporting items that emphasize the key points covered in the TRAMAN. The Suggested Readings direct the enrollees to materials that will provide in-depth studies beyond the scope of the TRAMAN.

This Training Manual and Nonresident Training course were prepared by the Naval Education and Training Program Management Support Activity, Pensacola, Florida, for the Chief of Naval Education and Training.

Revised 1984
Reprinted 1989

**Stock Ordering No.
0502-LP-218-9800**

Published by
NAVAL EDUCATION AND TRAINING PROGRAM
MANAGEMENT SUPPORT ACTIVITY

UNITED STATES
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON, D.C.: 1989

THE UNITED STATES NAVY

GUARDIAN OF OUR COUNTRY

The United States Navy is responsible for maintaining control of the sea and is a ready force on watch at home and overseas, capable of strong action to preserve the peace or of instant offensive action to win in war.

It is upon the maintenance of this control that our country's glorious future depends; the United States Navy exists to make it so.

WE SERVE WITH HONOR

Tradition, valor, and victory are the Navy's heritage from the past. To these may be added dedication, discipline, and vigilance as the watchwords of the present and the future.

At home or on distant stations we serve with pride, confident in the respect of our country, our shipmates, and our families.

Our responsibilities sober us; our adversities strengthen us.

Service to God and Country is our special privilege. We serve with honor.

THE FUTURE OF THE NAVY

The Navy will always employ new weapons, new techniques, and greater power to protect and defend the United States on the sea, under the sea, and in the air.

Now and in the future, control of the sea gives the United States her greatest advantage for the maintenance of peace and for victory in war.

Mobility, surprise, dispersal, and offensive power are the keynotes of the new Navy. The roots of the Navy lie in a strong belief in the future, in continued dedication to our tasks, and in reflection on our heritage from the past.

Never have our opportunities and our responsibilities been greater.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	Page
1. Why People Behave the Way They Do	1-1
2. Influencing Human Behavior	2-1
3. Perception	3-1
4. People Under Stress	4-1
5. Person to Person Communication	5-1
6. The Person and the Job	6-1
7. The Leader and the Group	7-1
8. Problem-Solving and Decision-Making	8-1
9. Teaching and Learning	9-1
APPENDIX	
1. Suggested Readings	AI-1
INDEX	I-1

al authority as a senior petty officer by e of your position in the Navy organization, ou have organizational authority by the par- ar billet you are now holding.

ral Authority

our general authority stems from article 1103 *S. Navy Regulations* which sets forth the ties of all officers and petty officers. Arti- 811 of *Navy Regs* gives you the right to ise authority over all persons subordinate to and the subordinates are charged, in article to obey their superiors.

nizational Authority

our organizational authority stems from assignment to a specific billet in a ship or n. Articles 0812 and 0829 of *Navy Regs* give ers, warrant officers, and petty officers ssary authority to perform their duties.

ul Orders

ll of your orders must be lawful. You can- npose punishment outside the framework of UCMJ. A factor that often causes some con- n among senior petty officers concerns the of actions that can be taken to correct minor ctions which do not merit punishment under le 15 of the UCMJ. These actions may in- e the correction of a subordinate's deficien- n a phase of military duty or the authority rect completion of work assignments that d beyond regular working hours. The wing sections explain some of the nonpunitive ures that are available to you as a military rvisor.

RA MILITARY STRUCTION

xtra military instruction is instruction in a e of military duty in which an individual is ient. EMI is intended and directed toward cting this deficiency. EMI is a nonpunitive ure that is permitted by section 0111b, *ual of the Judge Advocate General of the*

ship or station. It is intended as a corrective measure and is never to be used as a substitute for punitive action appropriate under the UCMJ. EMI must always be logically related toward correcting a deficiency. You cannot assign EMI for more than 2 hours a day and it may be assigned at a reasonable time outside normal working hours. The time will be no longer than is necessary to correct the training deficiency. In addition, EMI should never be assigned on the individual's Sabbath nor should it be used as a method of depriving the person of normal liberty. If the member has normal liberty, it should commence upon completion of EMI. Authority to assign EMI rests with your commanding officer but will probably be delegated to you as part of your normal supervisory tasks.

WITHHOLDING OF PRIVILEGES

Another nonpunitive measure used to correct infractions of military regulations or performance deficiencies is the temporary withholding of privileges. A privilege is a benefit provided for the convenience or enjoyment of an individual. Privileges that may be withheld are special liberty, exchange of duty, special pay, special command programs, the use of base or ship libraries, base or ship movies, base parking, and base special services events.

The final authority to withhold a privilege rests with the authority that grants the privilege; thus, in many cases, your action to withhold a privilege is limited to recommending that action via the chain of command. However, you are expected to, and should, make these recommendations when you deem it necessary to correct minor infractions and to increase the efficiency of your division.

EXTENSION OF WORKING HOURS

Deprivation of liberty as a punishment, except as directly authorized under the UCMJ, is illegal. You cannot deny any of your personnel normal liberty as a punishment for any offenses or malperformance of duty. However, you can require all of your personnel to perform tasks effi-

and be physically present outside of normal working hours for work assignments that should have been completed or for additional essential work or for the currently required level of operational readiness. You must keep your superiors informed when you intend to direct your subordinates to work beyond normal working hours. Remember that the work must be required by readiness, be essential, or be work which should have been done in the normal working day.

LEADERSHIP

It goes without saying that a good military leader and supervisor must first be well qualified in military and technical duties. As a leader, you are expected to serve as a good example to your subordinates. You must encourage, inspire, teach, and motivate your personnel. Use EMI and the withholding of privileges only after you have counseled the individual and normal instruction and training have failed to accomplish the necessary objective. Use nonpunitive measures for those failing to maintain normal standards, but make sure that you also acknowledge exemplary behavior and performance when you see it. You are expected to publicly commend your personnel, when appropriate, and take the initiative in

methods you should use are:

1. Recommending the awarding of letters of commendation and appreciation.
2. Recommending personal awards and assignment to training schools.
3. Recommending deserving personnel for sailor of the month, year, fleet, etc.
4. Assigning preferred duties.
5. Recommending personnel for reenlistment.
6. Awarding high performance marks.

Since human behavior is always a factor in leadership and management, this training manual and nonresident training course are designed to be used as tools to assist you in understanding and using your authority as a petty officer successfully so that you can fulfill your position in the chain of command. The information in the TRAMAN and NRTC deals with human nature, leadership, and management and attempts to show the interrelationships among all three of these factors. By understanding these relationships, you, as a leader and manager, can more fully understand your people and how to supervise their work. By increasing your understanding of human behavior, you will automatically increase your effectiveness as a good military leader.

CHAPTER 1

WHY PEOPLE BEHAVE THE WAY THEY DO

The history of Man's thought about Man is long and confused. It is full of wild notions and superstitions concerning omens, possessions by witches, and influences from the stars. It is also full of sincere quests for logical and scientific explanations of why people act the way they do.

The search for human understanding has had some success. It is far from complete but we probably do a better job of understanding people than our cave-dwelling, witch-hunting ancestors did. In explaining what people do, modern social scientists have developed several basic ideas.

BEHAVIOR IS CAUSED

Behavior does not happen without cause any more than a cruiser crew does not just happen to fire a salvo or change the ship's course. People are not pushed around by witches or influences from the stars. Whatever anybody does can generally be accounted for in terms of natural causes, whether events in the nervous system or events in the environment.

The idea that behavior results from natural causes may seem commonplace to some people and abstract to others. But the idea has a lot to do with our success in understanding what a person does, and why. If we forget this idea we may say, "Well, he jumped overboard because his number came up." Or, "She didn't pass the advancement exam because she's not a Navy type."

Such thinking will never improve our ability to understand or influence human behavior. It is

only a short step from wearing a rabbit's foot for luck or saying a magic incantation to get a disliked shipmate transferred. Instead of leaning on fate, luck, or evil spirits, we must expect and find natural causes for behavior.

BEHAVIOR IS DIRECTED TO ACHIEVE A GOAL

Human behavior can be explained to a large degree by the needs people have. The general notion is that people do things because they have specific needs that they seek to satisfy. For example, man seeks food because he has a need for food, or he seeks success because he has a need for approval or power.

Needs are driving forces of life. They energize behavior. They push. They are constantly behind behavior, influencing a person's choice of behavior. A need is a type of tension a person constantly carries around with him.

We can think of human behavior as a person's constant attempts to reduce tensions—to get needs satisfied. To satisfy needs, people direct their behavior toward a goal that is tension reducing. For example, you need money so you can buy an automobile. You direct your behavior (working, for instance) to achieve your goal (obtaining a car).

You carry many tensions at all times with you. They vary in kind and intensity with the particular situation. The relatively simple needs

for food and water serve as examples of how needs work. Hunger or the need for food is a tension. When you become hungry, your stomach muscles actually contract to produce that hungry feeling. These contractions continue until the stomach gets some food into it. After you start eating, the tension gradually disappears and the hunger goes away for awhile.

Suppose you are thirsty. You may simply drink a glass of water or go to the club for a beer. You take appropriate action to satisfy your need for liquid. If you aren't very thirsty, you probably won't mind too much if water isn't readily available or if the club is closed. But if you are really thirsty, you begin to concentrate on finding water or liquid, almost to the exclusion of everything else. At the very extreme, a person thirsting for days in the desert begins to think of nothing but water; everything the person does is motivated by a need for water, and all resources are directed to achieving this goal.

Some of the characteristics of human behavior now begin to emerge. They are caused by a need or tension that is unfulfilled, and this need mobilizes the energy needed for reaching a goal that will satisfy the need and reduce the tension. If one solution fails, we try another, mobilizing more and more energy as the need becomes more intense. Gradually we exclude everything that does not help us reach the goal.

In general, human behavior follows this pattern:

- Behavior is caused by a need which mobilizes the energy necessary to reach an appropriate goal.

- As the need becomes more intense, efforts to achieve the goal become more vigorous.

- With increased intensity of need, behavior is selectively narrowed down to those actions that seem to hold the most promise of reaching the goal.

A person must often search a long time to find a satisfactory way to fulfill more complicated human needs, such as the need to be somebody. A person may try some misguided ways, such as bragging a lot, soft-soaping in order to get advanced, or verbally running down shipmates to show superiority. The person, if wise, eventually finds that the most positive and successful way to be somebody is to work well and gain the respect and acceptance of fellow workers. When a person hits upon this way of satisfying needs, the person may reduce personal tension and become more satisfied. Again, the causes work the same way: tension → directed behavior → satisfaction → reduced tension.

BEHAVIOR IS COMPLEX

Needs seldom work one by one. In an individual's behavior many needs are at work over a long period of time, and at any given time several needs are interacting simultaneously. Rarely can we account for a person's actions by naming a single need. The behavior of a person who is hungry, interested in company, and also anxious to improve his status is likely to compromise these needs. A person will often seek a way of behaving that will satisfy all these needs at once, though it is possible the person may not find any such adjustment.

To illustrate, BMC Graham dines at the CPO club with his family. At one and the same time, he can be satisfying many needs: for survival (he is hungry); for safety (he is not worried about the safety conditions of the club); for belonging (he is in the midst of his happy family) and for esteem (he feels important and can dine well).

Or take RMC Miller, single, who is attending a junior college under the Servicemember's Opportunity College (SOC) or the Navy Campus (NC) programs. His goal is to become a commissioned officer. He spends long hours at his studies, takes and passes required courses, tries to have a certain amount of social or extracurricular life, and saves his money. He knows that when he graduates from the college, he must take additional evening

graduates his future will be complicated financially. But, balancing all the plusses and minuses, he keeps moving toward his long-range goal. He is willing to suffer a certain amount of hardship, inconvenience, and deprivation to reach it.

These two examples of behavior illustrate some of the important characteristics of complex behavior. The need for an enjoyable dinner at the club is an acquired need, even though it satisfies a built-in biological need. The need to be a commissioned officer is also an acquired need that can generate a wide range of behavior over a long period of time. Both of these needs demand satisfaction, in the sense that they mobilize the energy of the body's equipment to reach the goal, and the goal when reached may also satisfy a complex of other needs.

Often we cannot fully identify the needs that drive us forward. We say we want a new car to save on repair bills and depreciation; we are not likely to admit that we desire a new car to impress our neighbors and friends, and to enhance our view of ourselves. In this sense some of the drives that direct our behavior are buried in our subconscious.

In addition, we become highly selective in being conscious of those needs that are most important and acceptable to us while banishing discomforting and conflicting thoughts. In the same way, we selectively tend to judge outside actions in terms of what is most comforting or important to us. People direct personal behavior to protect their inner feelings of importance and they try to avoid situations that are perceived as painful, punishing, or threatening to their feelings of esteem. Personal behavior is protective and defensive against these perceived threats such as another person's disapproval, censure, or dislike. Human needs are for mental and emotional well-being as well as for physical health.

With these points in mind, we can view complex behavior as the result (but not the sum) of many similar and conflicting needs operating simultaneously and interacting with each other.

person's behavior. We know that when we experience a need we attempt to satisfy it; that is, we are aroused to action, and there must be energy mobilized for this action. We also know that we are aroused because we need something, and usually we can identify this goal, or at least we ordinarily know what will satisfy us. Furthermore, the longer the need is unsatisfied, the more important the goal usually becomes. The goals of behavior may be generated either by conscious and/or subconscious needs. Finally, biological needs may arise singly; we are hungry or thirsty or tired at separate times. In contrast, the more complicated needs, rarely, if ever, work one at a time; and ordinarily a wide range of needs operate simultaneously.

Complex behavior is variable and persistent—but within limits. It is often influenced by habits, cultural influences, and individual differences. We seek a satisfactory way of behaving that we can apply in many situations.

Normally, we are not continually facing situations where we have to work out a completely new way of behaving. Our attitudes, values, interests, standards, and habits interact together to form a general pattern of how we shall act in most given situations. These are our basic tools for successful living in a complex society and vary from one individual to another.

Finally, it is part of man's dignity to place limitations on his behavior. We can postpone immediate satisfaction for long-term satisfaction. We can accept a stirred-up state of present discomfort in expectation of future gains. To obtain ultimate relief from pain, a person will take medicine that momentarily makes the person very ill. People endure present hardships and deprivations if they see it leading to a future good that outweighs present disadvantage. A father or mother may go without new clothing or entertainment to give their children college educations. To gain much, people will endure much—but they must see the future satisfaction as worth the price.

Conversely, the expectation of present satisfaction may outweigh the advantages of

postponing satisfaction. For a seaman who goes UA, the present satisfaction has overridden the combined advantages of obeying the rules and being a seaman who keeps out of trouble.

Much of our behavior involves choice, a weighing of the pros and cons of immediate satisfaction against future benefits. Sometimes we may vote for the present, with unfortunate results; often we postpone the present for future good.

WHY HUMAN BEHAVIOR DIFFERS

Man learns some needs from the environment in which he lives. The acquisition of needs is dictated by each environment. These needs vary from one social environment to another.

A PERSON'S CULTURE INFLUENCES BEHAVIOR

Each individual is born into a culture. People around him have certain established ways of going about life. They know what is good, what is bad, what is success and failure. They have definite notions about morality. They possess established habits of work, play, cleanliness, lovemaking, and eating. They think highly of certain institutions of worship and government that they have developed to meet common problems and common needs. These habits, values, assumptions, morals, customs, and institutions vary tremendously from one culture to another. The social climate in New Guinea is not the same as that in Tokyo, Kalamazoo, New Delhi, or Washington. The Navy also has its own culture and established values of what constitutes socially acceptable behavior.

The individual is always trying to adjust to the culture in which the individual is born and grows. The process of making this adjustment or peace with environment is largely a process of learning the "right" needs. You have a great deal to do with the ease with which a new person learns the "right" needs and the "right" behavior to make that person an acceptable

physiological needs for hunger, thirst, rest, and sleep. Take hunger again. A person eats to survive, but the questions of what sort of food, when, and under what circumstances can only be answered if we know about the prohibitions and preferences the individual has learned while living in a particular culture. The individual's physiological needs are timed and trained by the daily routine of family, nation, culture, and religion.

The influence of a person's culture is just as great on the needs people learn. Instead of physiological necessities, these needs are acquired as a person goes about the process of living. Culture determines the needs themselves and also teaches the individual how, when, and where to let the needs operate.

Take self-assertiveness—the desire to assert oneself, to obtain standing and position. In America we regard this need as a basic part of human nature. Perhaps a major characteristic of Americans is the need for status, achievement, and superiority. But God didn't make Americans that way. They learned it. The prestige motive is almost universal. But there are some other cultures that do not like individual superiority. The best thing they can say about a person is that nobody ever hears anything about the person. Competition, the thing self-assertiveness thrives on, is practically unknown.

In our culture there is no denying the general need for self-assertiveness. And a minute's thought will convince anyone that our culture has fairly definite rules, learned by most Americans, about what "success" or "superiority" is and what means may be used to achieve it. The individual in our culture who lacks this outlook on superiority would be peculiar to the extreme. And an American thrown into a different culture might be regarded as insane.

A PERSON'S IMMEDIATE SITUATION INFLUENCES PERSONAL BEHAVIOR

Outside forces such as conditions in the environment influence the needs of people. In wartime, for example, a combat sailor's most

necessities is the paramount need of many people. On the other hand, in times of prosperity, when a man is reasonably certain of holding a job that pays enough to provide an adequate standard of living for himself and his family, his needs often shift from these needs to other needs like enjoying a vacation with his family or friends, having friends over for a Saturday night cookout, or taking a course at night to further his education. This is not to say that survival needs cease being important but that a person's attention turns to other needs upon satisfaction of survival needs.

The needs of an individual change with the particular situation. Take a second class petty officer, married, who is doing all right on his present salary until his wife has their first child. With the additional expense, his needs may shift back to life's necessities such as food and shelter. The same thing happens if an unexpected family illness puts a strain on the family budget. This point may help you to understand your subordinates' behavior. For example, the second class previously mentioned contributed cheerfully and willingly to the Navy Relief Drive last year. But this year, he contributed grudgingly or didn't want to contribute anything. You might think the person is uncooperative unless you know that additional family expenses this year are making it difficult to make ends meet.

INDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES INFLUENCE BEHAVIOR

People differ widely in their needs even though they grow up in the same culture and belong to the same social group within the culture. Though we generalize about the needs of the American culture, we still need to consider the unique individuals involved.

Looking at each person has practical applications for the leader. A new person is assigned to your unit. You are naturally interested in finding out what sort of individual this person is. So you review the record and find that the member is (a) an American, (b) a Baptist, (c) a high school graduate, and (d) was born on a farm in Iowa. These are the facts in the service record but what do you know about the individual's needs? You know that food, air, and

water needs are the same as for other human beings. You can guess that there will be an interest in money and in success and in having a few friends. But will this become a disciplinary problem? How ambitious is this Navy person? Not getting along with shipmates, fighting at the drop of a hat, or developing negative attitudes toward discipline are among the things that create problems in any organization. In this case, as in all cases, you do not know a person will function in an organization until you study that person. One individual's "human nature" is not exactly like any other "human nature" you ever saw before.

No two individuals are born identical. Identical twins come close, but even there we find minor differences. And no two individuals ever have identical environments. The environment may seem identical to outsiders but it is not the same to the people involved. The environment a person lives in is the environment as it appears to that person. And the way it appears depends on unique heredity and on unique previous experience.

The following illustration from Sinclair Lewis' "Work of Art" tells how two brothers reacted to the same family environment.

"My father," said Ora, "was a sloppy, lazy, booze-hoisting old bum, and my mother didn't know much besides cooking, and she was too busy to give me much attention, and the kids I knew were a bunch of foul-mouthed loafers that used to hang around the hoboos up near the water tank, and I never had a chance to get any formal schooling, and I got thrown on my own as just a brat. So naturally I've become a sort of vagabond that can't be bored by thinking about his 'debts' to a lot of little shop-keeping lice, and I supposed I'm inclined to be lazy, and not too scrupulous about the dames and the liquor. But my early rearing did have one swell result. Brought up so unconventionally, I'll always be an Anti-Puritan. I'll never deny the joys of the flesh. . . ."

"And my father," said Myron, "was pretty easy-going and always did like drinking and swapping stories with the boys, and my mother was hard-driven taking care of us, and I heard a lot of filth from the hoboes up near the water tank. Maybe just sort of as a reaction I've become almost too much of a crank about paying debts, and fussing over my work, and being scared of liquor and women. But my rearing did have one swell result. Just by way of contrast, it made me a good sound, old-fashioned New England Puritan."

Individuals in the same culture, even in the same family, differ enormously in the strength and variety of their needs. One person may have a constant, burning desire to increase his professional or military status. The need to get ahead is that person's paramount need and it will flavor all activities such as helping to determine who will be the person's friend or spouse. Further, the drive to get ahead will play a large role in determining the quantity and quality of the person's work and the person's attitudes toward and relations with superiors and subordinates. Another person may have such a strong need for sociability that friends are chosen instead of "success," that "getting ahead" is relatively unimportant. Still another person may need food or sex much more often and in greater quantities than does another. One may spend a lifetime seeking economic security while another hunts for adventure and variety.

CLASSES OF HUMAN NEEDS

Each person is different from any other person. Although each person has unique needs, people have many needs in common. People, as they grow and develop, are subject to similar experiences in the family, the school, and society. Therefore, despite wide individual differences, people within our culture display certain common characteristics.

Identifying and classifying the needs that influence human behavior according to their relative importance is a task that has been

understanding human behavior. We need a classification simple enough to be practical yet broad enough to cover observed behavior. At best, any possible classification cannot be all-inclusive because some needs defy classification in neat categories and the comparative value of needs do fluctuate.

All people have five common needs. These needs may be pictured on a triangle, or pyramid, with the basic needs lying at the base with the increasingly more complex needs layered toward the top. Starting from the bottom, the needs arranged in order of their relative importance are (a) survival, (b) security, (c) social, (d) ego, and (e) growth. (See figure 1-1.)

After each discussion of the security, social, status, and self-fulfillment needs, we shall describe the leadership behavior of people who are continually motivated by that type need. Warning: each leader type is considered in pure form, even though we seldom find such hard-and-fast cases. Most people tend to possess some of the characteristics of each of these types. Admittedly, this is a theoretical treatment but there is much evidence that the dominant level of motivation explains a great deal of behavior.

As you read, you can probably identify persons who appear to conform to the type described. But the intent is to encourage you to identify your own needs, behavior, and goals.

SURVIVAL NEEDS

The survival needs are the built-in needs that are related to physical survival and include such things as air, food, water, and shelter. They are basic needs and are placed at the first level because of their power to cause our behavior. Suppose you were forced under water. Your need for air will compel you to the most violent physical efforts to get back to the surface for air.

You, as an honest, law-abiding citizen would never steal. Yet if you could obtain no food for 4 or 5 days, and then you had the opportunity to steal a loaf of bread, what would you do? When the survival needs are not satisfied, they induce a person to go to great extremes to meet them. When such needs are felt they motivate

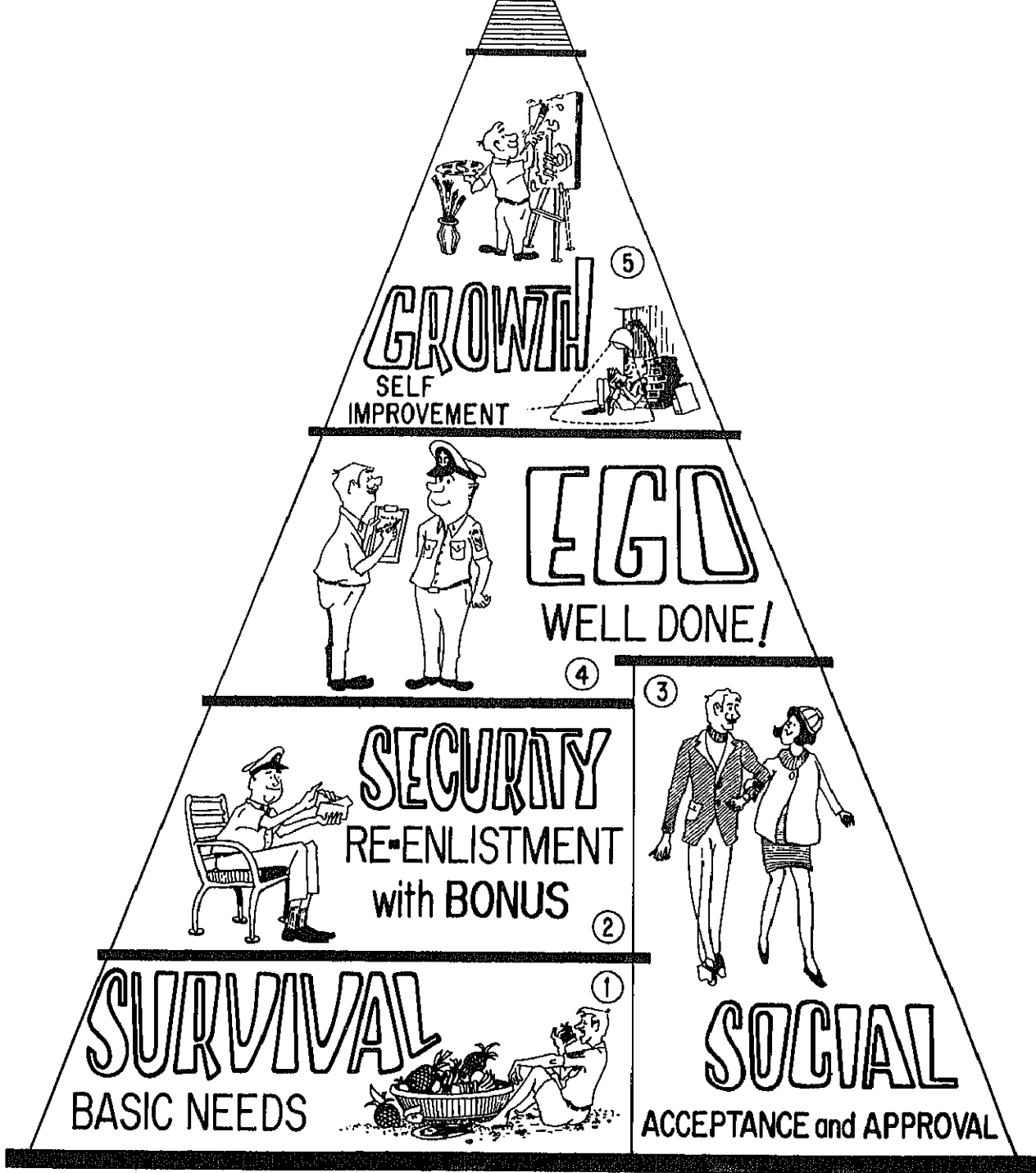


Figure 1-1.—The Triangle of Human Needs.

not evident in the day-to-day life of the average Navy man or woman. Usually they have these needs satisfied in the course of routine duty because they are rarely exposed to prolonged hunger or thirst. But, if such needs go unsatisfied over a long period of time and threaten one's survival, attempts to satisfy them will completely dominate behavior and mobilize all the capacities and energy that a human being possesses.

It is true that man lives for bread alone—when there is no bread; but what happens when there is plenty of bread? We cannot make the emergency picture a typical one and measure all human goals and desires by behavior during extreme deprivation. Once an individual's physical needs for survival are satisfied, they no longer dominate behavior. Other needs then influence human behavior.

SECURITY NEEDS

The security needs come into play when we have met most of our physical needs. When we are no longer worried about today's needs we become concerned about tomorrow's breakfast or next winter's shelter. However, the average Navy person in ordinary times is not too concerned with these safety needs as the Navy takes steps to protect Navy personnel from the grosser forms of violence, disease, famine, and poverty. The sense of safety in a smoothly running unit is usually taken for granted. Yet a Navy member expresses safety needs in the desire for a stable assignment, for safe working conditions, for money in the bank, and for consistent leadership. For many Navy people, the idea of a civilian depression constitutes a threat to safety, and a recession can reactivate their safety needs which normally lie dormant.

Security needs are closely related to an orderly, stable, predictable environment in which unexpected, unmanageable, and dangerous events seldom happen. The familiar is preferred to the unfamiliar, the known to the unknown. Security needs usually do not operate unless a person is threatened or endangered, and then they take over violently. Panic, for

attempts of many people to satisfy their safety needs at the same time as in a fire. But except in such crises or emergencies, the normal person is more concerned with satisfying other needs.

Some people never get beyond the level of satisfying security needs. Anything new is dangerous; any change in the routine means a step into the dangerous unknown. They tend to subordinate everything else in life to their need for safety.

The Security Motivated Leader

What about a leader who seeks security above all? That person plays it safe in everything, just to get by with each assignment. This type of leader/manager is well organized and rigid in thinking and habits; there is a tendency to look down on those who are not as organized as the leader/manager.

The boss is omnipotent. Anything that pleases the superior is right and important to the safety seeker, since the boss controls the individual's welfare. Pleasing the boss and keeping one's job are in themselves not damaging. However, when one's motives are primarily seeking safety, the basic requirements for effective leadership/management are missing. The welfare of others has no meaning, cooperation is just a word, and dedication to a cause is nonsense. This type of person often attaches no significance to fundamental rights of others. Self-respect, importance, and the need to realize one's true potential are practically nonexistent.

Many of us may have some of the characteristics of the seeker-after security. How far would you go to conceal a mistake from your superior? What slanting of the facts would you practice to get in the top 1% on your Performance Evaluation? Would you permit your associates to be handicapped by your efforts to cover up your own mistakes? Would you agree with your boss even though you have good reason to disagree? Do you prefer not to rock the boat?

While you should realistically examine your own security needs, remember that the effective leader is motivated by security needs only when they are threatened.

SOCIAL NEEDS

If both the survival and the safety needs are adequately satisfied, then the social needs emerge—a broad term for love, acceptance, and approval by others. At this stage a person feels keenly the absence or lack of friends. Friendly relations are sought with people in general and for a place in the various groups with which there is association. The desire is to be liked or wanted as a person. In short, this person wants to belong.

There are two aspects to the social needs. The first involves love and affection between individuals, as expressed between sweethearts, husband and wife, parents, children, and very close friends. It is the intimate sharing of life with another or others, and involves a reciprocal relationship.

The second aspect of social needs makes us want a stable, accepted relationship with other people as a practicing, functioning member of a group of some kind, and this covers all the formal and informal groups of people with whom we work, live, and play. We tend to identify ourselves with particular groups and to seek acceptance from them, often subtly modifying our behavior to meet the standards of the group.

The social needs revolve around one central idea: the need to be liked and wanted not only by our intimate family and friends but by the people with whom we associate in work or play.

In the Navy, the group concept—that is, two or more people doing a job together—can become the means of satisfying the subordinates' needs for acceptance and belonging. The group concept rising from the need to belong is one of the foundation stones of effective leadership.

The Socially Motivated Leader

What about the leader who is strongly

is constantly motivated to do what will cause approval. If, in addition, there is competence, there is the possibility of very effective leadership. This type of leader/manager will speak warmly to superiors, subordinates, and associates. This person uniformly tries to take action that will be approved by everyone concerned.

A leader who is socially insecure has difficulty because the dedication is to gain affection, not to fulfill the mission. Sooner or later, the position will arrive where loyalty to superiors will demand action that will not be popular with the people. Under these conditions, this type of leader/manager is likely to resolve the problem by seeking to do what is most popular with the people.

Generally, the popularity seeker loses status when the group has a real goal. Once a group is mission-oriented, the good leader must be the source of helping the group accomplish the mission. Being a "nice guy" is not enough. Though still liked, the position of leader is lost.

EGO NEEDS

All the needs that make us feel more important fall within the category of esteem needs. In this area higher needs become increasingly more complex and it becomes more difficult to make exact distinctions. One need shades into another and it is almost impossible to isolate one single need from the others. The need to belong and to be identified with a group is just a short step from the need for status and recognition by the group. The former implies passive acceptance of us as a person by others; the latter involves not only acceptance but active recognition of our talents and abilities—as we ourselves see them.

Whether it's winning a contest or repairing a jet engine, there is a basic satisfaction for all of us in achieving or doing a job well. Our inner satisfaction is enhanced if other people recognize our achievements and applaud our

any job well can be a powerful motivator for the person who seeks status and recognition.

Human beings tend to build self-profiles, a picture that demands certain things are done and that movement is in the direction to maintain self-respect. Depending on the circumstances, one can see oneself in different roles and act consistently with them. To the disbursing clerks, it is a whiz with figures, and to the disbursing officer, a model of exactness. To barracks mates, it is a good bowler, and to the girlfriend or boyfriend, it is a charming person who is nonchalant about the world. Our ability to carry out successfully many roles to our own satisfaction is essential to our self-respect.

There are two aspects to the ego needs: the need for status and recognition by others and the need to maintain our self-respect with all the social and moral standards that are involved. Satisfaction of the esteem needs in their various ramifications leads to feelings of self-confidence, worth, strength, capability, and adequacy that build a person's sense of being useful and necessary.

Because of individual differences, the quest to satisfy the need for esteem may exhibit varying forms of behavior. A scientist, for example, who is primarily motivated by needs for prestige in scientific or academic circles may be warm, likeable, and sociable; or may be cold, unpleasant, and hermitlike, depending solely on recognition of research. The higher the level of motivation, the less easy it is for us to speculate about pure types; therefore, let's arbitrarily consider the person who seeks power and prestige above all else, and see what the person might be like—as a general type.

As a leader, this type of person is likely to be fairly successful. Seeking responsibility, and liking to be the boss, there is boundless energy for achieving things that will gain recognition. Every effort will be exhausted to fight for the crew, if the results are admiration for the leader. Thus, the criterion of success is recognition. Rank and high effectiveness reports are

person is good at it. As a member of a team, however, there is no satisfaction in just being another member. This type leader must run the show and be recognized as the star, and that is the difficulty. Motivation is not by genuine interest in the mission but by personal need to be recognized.

This sort of leader is usually effective. He or she is firm but fair, aggressive, confident, alert, ambitious, decisive, and responsible. All of these characteristics are ordinarily associated with the effective leader. But this type of leader has a serious flaw. Encouraging dependence, the crew-team members lose their drive and enthusiasm. There is no concentration on giving subordinates self-importance and prestige. Under such leadership the members of the group may be fairly happy and effective, but in the long run they do not feel satisfied with their lot.

In presenting this extreme case of the drive for power and prestige, we do not want to imply that esteem needs are not admirable. On the contrary, they lie behind some of man's finest achievements. In addition, man's need to be the sort of person desired underlies much of day-to-day activity. The search for explanations and a working philosophy of life. The attempts to maintain self-respect in the face of incredible barriers, and the efforts to make the most of talents in any situation—all these flow from the need for self-esteem.

SELF-FULFILLMENT AND GROWTH NEEDS

Even when people have satisfied most of their esteem needs, they seem to feel the urge to move on to a higher level. Here man approaches the fullest possible integration of self, in which all talents, capacities, and potentialities are put to use. The yearning to be a Navy frogman, an Olympic champion, or whatever is believed to be the best that can be done. Or, realizing the limitations, one wants to be the finest possible person and to realize the true destiny within

actualization) should not be confused with outstanding achievement, which may exist on the level of esteem needs. Nor should it be equated with high intelligence or great ambition. The average person has as much need and capacity for self-fulfillment as does the outstanding leader or doer in any field. What one can be, one will try to be, and this growth-goal will vary from person to person.

On the scale of needs, self-growth needs come at the top. In general, all the other needs must be adequately satisfied before the need to develop one's full potential and talents becomes a strong influence on behavior. Most people must gratify to a minimum acceptable level their basic needs for survival, security, social belonging, and self-esteem before they can fully use and develop their talents, capabilities, and potential. That, in essence, is what self-growth means—development to the full stature of which a person is capable.

The Self-Fulfillment Motivated Leader

A discussion of the characteristics of the self-fulfilled leader can give us insights into the qualities possessed by the leader who has reached this stage of growth and development.

RELATION TO REALITY.—The type leader who strives for self-fulfillment has an accurate and comfortable perception of reality in people and situations, displaying unusual ability to judge people correctly, displaying uncanny ability to decide whether their motives are honest, sincere, and wholesome. Also, reactions to people are less affected by personal wishes, fears, and prejudices than are those of most persons.

As this type leader is able to grasp the full impact of reality, there is no fright from unknown. This leader does not have to spend time protecting the self from imagined dangers

approaches is part of the normal habit of thought.

A self-fulfilling individual shows a high degree of acceptance of self, others, and human nature as they are. This leader can admit shortcomings and mistakes and live comfortably with them; and expects others to do the same. The individual chooses to be judged as a real person, no need to impress others by subterfuge and posturing. Accepting the personal self and others as they really are, this leader is not deeply disturbed by the self-seeking of others. Human frailties are a fact, and are accepted as such. There is no reaction against human weakness but attempts to deal with it realistically as part of the overall scheme of things.

SPONTANEITY.—The self-fulfilling person is relatively spontaneous in outward behavior and far more spontaneous than most people in his inner life, thoughts, and impulses. This person behaves simply and naturally, without artificiality or straining for effect.

In the military situation, the ideal leader will go along with minor irritations and do the best to correct them within the extent of personal resources. But let a crisis or a major issue arise, and this leader will sometimes come up with unconventional and imaginative solutions.

Here we see the true character of a person of principle in operation. Sense of mission dictates what is acceptable and what is unacceptable. People do not have to share this person's ideas; this leader values personal ideas as those of only one person. So long as the job is accomplished, this sort of leader is not disturbed if people don't do things the way he would do them.

On the other hand, let a matter of vital principle be involved, and this leader will fight relentlessly. Unfairness in dealing with people, wanton waste of funds, or irresponsible

stupidity that affects the imagination and makes this type of person to fight even against overwhelming odds. A leader of this type simply will not tolerate a lack of a sense of mission at any level. This leader can lead in a crisis situation even when some personal needs are being thwarted.

PROBLEM-CENTERING.—The self-fulfilling leader focuses on a broad problem outside himself. This person is dedicated to mission, and this dedication is the dominant factor in effective leadership.

Such a leader customarily lives and works within a framework of values that are broad and universal rather than petty and local. Long-term objectives are always kept in mind. To other persons this leader gives the impression of being above small things, because he lives in a world with broad horizons and a wide breadth of vision. This seems to impart to the individual a certain serenity and lack of worry over immediate concerns. This attitude makes life easier not only for this leader but for all who are associated with him.

Concept and sense of mission are the central unifying motives of this leader's behavior. It gives a person a focus and direction for energies. Hence, this leader is dedicated to ideals for which he is willing to fight.

DETACHMENT AND PRIVACY.—Whereas the average American usually avoids being completely alone, this leader can endure solitude without discomfort. In fact, he may like solitude and privacy and seek them out.

This quality of detachment often makes it possible to remain unruffled and undisturbed by things that cause turmoil in others. Such an individual can take personal misfortune and disappointments without reacting violently, and can somehow maintain dignity even in undignified surroundings and situations.

In time of crisis or grave situations, such a person can be a strengthening force for other people. His ability to stand back and take a clear view of things makes this leader an impregnable fortress. By the mere coolness of presence a

Through detachment and serenity, this type of leader can be relatively independent of culture and surroundings. Since this leader is so largely self-contained, personal stability and happiness can be maintained in the face of hardships and deprivations. This leader has become strong enough to be less dependent than most people for the good opinion of others or even of their affection. Honors, rewards, and overt display of esteem have become less important than personal development and inner growth.

FRESHNESS OF APPRECIATION.—Life rarely grows stale for this type leader because he continually looks at life and the world with fresh and appreciative eyes. A job well done, a sunset, a piece of music, a kind act—these can give this type of person the sort of pleasure that he would find difficult to describe. This acute richness of subjective experience probably rises out of the closer perception of the fresh and concrete aspects of reality. For the self-fulfilling person, each experience, no matter how often repeated, is potentially a new one.

What does this mean for the self-fulfilling leader? Pure routine can take on the aspects of challenge. To see a group of people harmoniously working together can be a constant source of happiness; to see an individual grow and develop can be immensely satisfying. While striving for long-range goals, such a leader finds real satisfaction in the daily accomplishment of the mission.

FEELING OF HUMANITY.—This leader generally has a deep feeling of identification and affection for human beings, despite occasional feelings of anger or impatience for particular individuals. There is a genuine desire to help others; because all persons are truly brothers, however weak, however strong. Although this leader is often dismayed and even enraged by the shortcomings of people, an underlying sense of kinship for them remains.

Despite the sense of detachment, this leader is capable of deeper affection and greater denial of self in personal relationships than other people would consider possible. He can be friendly with anyone of suitable character regardless of class, education, political belief,

respects people who can teach him something; and no individual will be robbed of his human dignity.

PHILOSOPHICAL SENSE OF HUMOR.—

This kind of leader is likely to have a sense of humor that is not the ordinary kind. He may consider a situation not funny when the average man thinks it is hilarious. For him, humor does not consist in making fun of someone, in laughing at someone else's shortcomings, or in retelling a smutty joke. This person's humor consists in poking fun at human beings in general when they are foolish or try to be big when they are actually small. Most of his jokes will be wry comments on mankind and the universe. They usually have a thoughtful philosophical humor which draws forth a smile more than a laugh. They grow out of a situation spontaneously, and often can never be repeated to gain exactly the same effect.

CREATIVENESS.—Each self-fulfilling person shows in one way or another a special kind of creativeness or inventiveness that has a certain flair. This is not the special talent of a creative genius, but rather a spirit or attitude with which the self-fulfilling person approaches life and everything the person tries. In this sense, there can be creative people in any rank or rating or in any walk of life.

To the extent that any of this person's shortcomings oppose the role as a leader and the need to identify with the group, this type leader must be on guard either to overcome the shortcomings or to keep them well under control. This leader sees clearly that control of shortcomings is dictated by the sense of mission that must be accomplished.

A self-fulfilling person is most likely to have the personality and behavior characteristics that we identify with successful leaders. The opportunity for growth is a challenge to any potential leader. As a petty officer grows in experience the petty officer handles increasing responsibilities, copes with rapid situational change, and handles the stresses of the hostile environment of combat. Your adequacy as a

self-improvement and professional growth. Your attitude, for example, has a great bearing upon your self-development.

Through a positive attitude, the petty officer approaches each task, situation, and group with a will to apply what has been learned, with a will to adjust actions when necessary, but with the realization that anything done by the leader or others must not, in any way, detract from accomplishing the mission.

Closely linked with a positive attitude is self-motivation. When you have a positive attitude, you are motivated to meet your duties and responsibilities as a petty officer and leader, regardless of your present duty assignment.

The burden of motivation and application rests with you. It is your responsibility to apply the principles of leadership in every situation. Knowledge, facts, techniques, and principles are of little value unless they are applied. Analyze your situation to determine how well you apply what you have learned about leadership. Through practice you can improve your personal leadership and develop a program to attain your professional goals and objectives. Avail yourself of every opportunity from formal training to your day-to-day work to increase your leadership skills in understanding and dealing with your people. Try to increase your perceptiveness, to develop a greater interest in people, and to develop skill in human relations.

SUMMARY

Within any large organization, the variations among people is little short of astounding. People with their different values, beliefs, and habits present a challenge to your perception and understanding. It is important that you understand the various needs that people have to predict their behavior or how your people are going to react in various situations. This also includes anticipating how your people are going to react to you personally, and to your actions. By predicting behavior, you can eliminate those

actions likely to unnecessarily antagonize your people and use those which are most likely to result in favorable reactions. This ability to adapt, to regulate one's own behavior according to the particular situation, is one of the essential ingredients of good leadership.

The leader who can predict how subordinates will react in a given situation has a substantial advantage over one who cannot. This leader is far better equipped to effectively lead

and at the same time to maintain efficiency at a high level.

No leadership training can teach you about the idiosyncrasies of individuals in your group. Individuals differ from one another, and the differences can be identified only by studying individuals in real-life situations. Nevertheless, as we have seen, there are certain needs that people share in common. The general knowledge of these needs is a cornerstone of leadership.

CHAPTER 2

INFLUENCING HUMAN BEHAVIOR

An essential tool of leadership is a knowledge of human nature. If you understand that an individual's needs direct and influence behavior, you are better equipped to fulfill your leadership responsibilities. You are better able to understand both yourself and your group for you are subject to the same basic needs as your people.

HOW MAN'S BASIC NEEDS INFLUENCE BEHAVIOR

The average American has acquired certain needs as a result of growing up in America, and emerges into maturity as the end product of our culture. When needs are aroused, behavior is directed in ways believed to best satisfy them. Let us take a closer look at the ways man's basic needs influence behavior.

A HIGHER NEED IS GENERATED AS THE LOWER NEED IS SATISFIED

Survival needs appear first in the human, and such is the case with all animals. Man's need for food overshadows other needs when a person is hungry. Man's basic survival needs for food, air, and water are the most urgent and satisfaction of these needs cannot usually be postponed. Food and safety requirements can push needs for friends and for esteem into the background. Take the case of an individual who is looking for a job. Safety or security needs will dominate the person's behavior and the belonging and esteem needs will have little influence on his behavior in this situation.

safety needs are satisfied. The lower needs are easier to satisfy, but the satisfactions are less pervasive. Food and safety in themselves do not seem to produce the happiness and sense of accomplishment that come with satisfaction of higher needs. The higher needs can be disregarded more easily, but when satisfied, they bring a greater sense of well-being. In general, survival, safety, and belonging needs vary less from individual to individual than do esteem and self-fulfilling needs.

The classification of needs and their relative importance imply that each lower need must be fully and separately satisfied before the next higher one can come into play. This is often true, but one goal can satisfy a great many needs, and certain needs in certain individuals may become deadened or undervalued. But the arrangement of needs in order of relative importance does account for much observable behavior.

A SATISFIED NEED CEASES TO INFLUENCE BEHAVIOR

People may experience one or more types of needs at the same time or in rapid succession. They may experience needs at all levels in the same day. Generally speaking, our behavior will be influenced most strongly by the lower level need at any given moment. The failure to satisfy these lower level needs will distract your attention from the higher level needs. This means that tasks related to the higher needs will suffer as they wait on the satisfaction of lower

want to continue to work. In spite of this, you find yourself distracted by something so simple as a late lunch. This distraction will increase as lunch is delayed. The lunch break comes and you eat. Since you satisfied your lower need you have lost your interest in food. You discover that a need, when satisfied, no longer guides behavior. A rule may be concluded from this; if we do not need a certain thing, we usually do not work for it and consequently the satisfied need ceases to influence behavior. But keep in mind that somewhere on the need scale, from lower to higher, there isn't a moment in life when we do not need something.

MAN'S HIGHER NEEDS FOR ESTEEM AND SELF-FULFILLMENT ARE NEVER COMPLETELY SATISFIED

Man's basic needs for food, water, shelter may be completely satisfied but man's needs for approval, recognition, and achievement may never be completely satisfied. These higher needs are constant and continuing and thus always influence behavior. The person who has met most of the basic needs acquires these higher needs and thus seeks satisfaction of them. It follows that the leader should seek ways in which to help satisfy the needs for esteem and self-fulfillment in other individuals, as well as, those more basic needs.

PEOPLE MAY BEHAVE IN DIFFERENT WAYS TO SATISFY THE SAME NEED

Man, to achieve personal needs, directs his behavior in order to obtain results that are the most satisfying and rewarding. Thus, behavior to satisfy the same need may take different courses of action.

Suppose you perceive that your division officer regards high production to be the most important criterion for job success and advancement. You, to meet your need for approval and achievement, will probably concentrate on having a high production rate, even to the sacrifice of high quality. On the other hand, if you believe that your boss desires

perhaps sacrificing a high production rate, you believe that a product of excellence is your way to success and approval. In these different situations, you adjust your behavior in way to promise approval and recognition from a particular leader. But even in doing this, your behavior takes different directions to achieve the same goal.

The leader should try to approach the situation in which the work goal promotes a person composite rewards of belonging, status, and getting ahead in accordance with their achievements and abilities. People generally work enthusiastically under these conditions and when this striving takes place in an atmosphere of approval, the results are usually better. It thus behooves the leader to set meaningful, well-defined goals that will help accomplish the work mission and encourage personnel to satisfy their needs and goals in ways that are rewarding to them.

THE LEADER LOOKS BEYOND A PERSON'S OVERT BEHAVIOR TO DETERMINE THE BASIC NEEDS

Suppose an individual in your division suddenly changes from an enthusiastic motivated worker to one who is lackadaisical and apathetic towards work. Before jumping to the conclusion that this worker doesn't care about the job anymore, you, as the leader, want to take a closer look at the situation to determine the need or needs behind the behavior. Is there a financial problem threatening the person's security? Is the person's esteem need threatened because you assigned him to a menial job without any explanation?

There is always a reason for change in behavior in a person and it is often a challenge to you, as the leader, to determine the basic cause behind any overt behavior. Gaining an insight into the basic problem affecting a person may help you to either solve the situation by taking corrective action or you may help this person reach a satisfactory solution.

Discovering the need or combination of needs beyond one's overt behavior helps you to get to the root of the problem. You are then better equipped to deal with the problem and to work out a satisfactory solution.

AN INDIVIDUAL'S NEEDS ON THE JOB

MANY OF THE WORKER'S SURVIVAL AND SECURITY NEEDS ARE MET ON THE JOB

Most Navy people are able to meet their survival and security needs in the Navy. The Navy provides them food, shelter, and clothing, and many benefits that help ensure their security such as guaranteed employment until their enlistment expires, hospitalization, dental care, and retirement pensions. In short, their survival and security needs do not greatly influence their behavior since these needs are generally satisfied. On the other hand, if living conditions are unsatisfactory, the need for adequate shelter then greatly motivates their behavior. A young recruit who is barely able to meet financial obligations and expenses for food, clothing, and housing is more concerned with survival and security needs than with needs for esteem, recognition, etc. Generally, however, the survival and security needs of most Navy personnel do not dominate their behavior. Of course, the Navy member in combat or one who is facing disciplinary action is concerned with security needs.

THE NEEDS FOR ESTEEM AND SELF-GROWTH MOTIVATE A WORKER'S BEHAVIOR

Once the survival and safety needs are satisfied, the needs to belong, to be esteemed, and to fulfill one's potential are activated and exert great influence on behavior.

These needs continually motivate behavior since they can never be fully satisfied. Man's need for approval and acceptance never ceases. The individual continually desires recognition for achievements. However, each person must

of self-fulfillment can influence personal behavior. Thus, if you, as their leader, wish to motivate your people, you must look for ways to help them satisfy their belonging, esteem, and self-fulfillment needs, for these needs continually influence and direct their behavior.

BASIC ASSUMPTIONS ABOUT A PERSON'S WILL TO WORK

UNDER PROPER CONDITIONS, A PERSON WILL GENERALLY SEEK

Professional Growth in Work

People desire to learn new skills and to progress to more challenging work assignments.

Job Responsibilities

People desire job responsibilities that use their technical knowledge and ability to perform efficiently.

Mastery of the Job

People seek to become proficient in their jobs, for mastery of their jobs adds to their sense of achievement.

A Feeling of Pride in the Job

People find rewarding their sense of achievement from getting the job done efficiently.

Recognition for a Job Well-Done

A person desires recognition for doing a job well because positive recognition increases the drive to succeed while recognition of only the mistakes will diminish the desire to achieve.

These basic assumptions listed above state that people, given proper work experiences, react positively and favorably to work responsibilities. The key problem is identifying these work experiences.

nature and people constantly seek to satisfy these needs while on the job as well as off the job.

People react favorably and positively to work when there is the belief that needs and goals are best fulfilled through constructive courses of action that contribute to the success of the unit and organization. They perceive that their chances for success in satisfying needs are increased through positive actions rather than negative actions such as minimum compliance, indifference, or hostility.

To motivate the worker, the leader provides the opportunities for each worker to develop abilities and talents. The leader helps them to increase their job skills and allows them to use their judgment as they develop their skills and abilities.

The effective CPO who succeeds in these endeavors helps the crew to be committed to the work and organizational goals. As the members of the crew meet their goals for esteem, recognition, and growth in mastering their work, they are more likely to voluntarily accept the work goals because these goals are rewarding to them. These rewards of esteem and recognition are the direct products of their efforts to meet the organization's goals.

Under these conditions, the leader does not have to depend solely on external controls, such as putting a subordinate on report, sending an offender to Captain's Mast, or continually reminding a person of his duties.

External controls by the leader are sometimes necessary and appropriate, but their frequent use combined with threats of punishment at best results in passive acceptance and may result in indifference or resistance to the work mission.

The effective petty officer continually strives to create work experiences that are rewarding to the crew and that bring about an inner commitment of the crew to the work goals established by the leader.

THE WILL TO WORK COMES FROM WITHIN

What generates the inner will to work so that external forces are not necessary? Why do some

while others are passive or indifferent? Can a leader help put a "generator" inside a person so that each operation is done on the person's own energies without the need to be motivated by external forces?

People who have their own generator are self-directed. We call such people "motivated." Taking a closer look at motivation, we find that the noun "motivation" comes from the noun "motive," which, according to Webster, is "something (as a need or desire) that causes a person to act. . . . Motive implies an emotional desire operating on the will and causing a person to act." All people are motivated to act, because they have built-in needs or motives that they want to satisfy. Of course, the direction of their motivation varies with their individual motives, desires, ambitions, goals, fears, hates, and dislikes.

A leader may use external controls to direct workers, but external forces cannot motivate them because true motivation comes from within a person. Motivation on the job are self-starting and self-sustaining. Therefore, external force is generally unnecessary. Such people take necessary action on their own accord. External controls may move one's behavior toward an organizational goal while a motivated person, in most situations, exerts the push or drive to achieve without outside motivation. The leader's job is to provide the stimuli, opportunities, and incentives that unharness the workers' inner motivation to meet their work assignments.

Let us look further at motivation (the experience the nature of the work itself provides (job content) and the external work factors (job context)--to discover what motivates a person on the job.

EXTERNAL WORK FACTORS PREVENT SOME WORKER DISSATISFACTION

A sailor's morale is greatly influenced by the degree of job satisfaction and job dissatisfaction. Let us first examine the external factors that affect job dissatisfaction. These dissatisfaction

- organizational policies and procedures
- administration

- working conditions
- supervision
- job security

These job elements are referred to as hygiene factors. Like washing your hands, they are factors that you, as a supervisor, should try to take care of to avoid trouble. Poor working conditions, such as unreasonable or unrealistic work schedules can cause discontent, resentment, and can result in everyone's lowered morale. For example, suppose that an unfair watchstanding policy is instituted. This is sure to affect the morale of the group and to cause some unhappiness, complaints, and irritation. However, though you work to make a fair watchstanding schedule and to set reasonable work schedules, you get only to the point of "no job dissatisfaction."

You may think that in the Navy situation you have little influence over workers' pay, working conditions, etc. However, you help determine a person's rate of pay by your appraisal of that person and your decision whether or not to recommend the person for advancement. Often you can improve working conditions. Suppose you have a worker who is left-handed. You can make sure that there is a desk location that takes the left-handedness into account. Sometimes, you cannot personally take care of hygiene factors such as an electrical system breakdown. But you can prevent some workers' dissatisfaction if your people know that you are doing all within your power to remedy such situations. For example, you cannot expect fair work procedures and good working conditions alone to motivate your crew. If hygiene factors are not taken care of, poor working attitudes may result. But you must realize that your workers are not motivated solely by fair work procedures and good working conditions. You can better understand this by remembering how people's needs operate. The dissatisfiers correspond generally to the physical, security, and social needs. Most Navy personnel can meet the majority of these

motivate. However, if these hygiene or job dissatisfaction preventive factors are neglected, these strong needs are aroused, causing dissatisfaction, and lowered morale.

THE JOB CONTENT CAN PROVIDE WORKER SATISFACTION AND MOTIVATION

The job satisfiers are found in the nature of the work itself or in the job content. These satisfiers are:

- achievement
- responsibility and personal initiative to carry out the job
- meaningful work
- recognition in terms of a job well-done or personal accomplishment
- advancement or increased status

These factors motivate people on the job. Note they relate to the esteem and self-growth needs. As we can never completely satisfy these needs, they have continuing power to motivate behavior. An employee is at the low point of the job satisfaction scale if the employee experiences little or no satisfaction in the nature of the work.

In any job there are both satisfiers and dissatisfiers present. An employee's morale on a given day may be strongly influenced by working conditions or supervisory experiences. But dissatisfaction may or may not influence production, depending on the strength of the job satisfiers that are present. For example, Seaman A, who is not experiencing much job satisfaction, complains to the disbursing officer about a mistake in pay. If the mistake isn't corrected within a reasonable period, that person's morale and production will likely suffer, because job dissatisfiers exert a stronger force on behavior and attitudes than do job satisfiers. As job dissatisfactions increase, job satisfactions decrease. Now, let's take the case of

Seaman B, who likewise finds a paycheck error but who is experiencing much satisfaction in a job in which there is a sense of achievement and a chance of advancement. In contrast to Seaman A, Seaman B is more likely to maintain high morale and a high production rate for a longer period because the job satisfiers are stronger than the dissatisfiers for Seaman B.

So you try to keep the job dissatisfiers at a minimum and the job satisfiers at a maximum. This is the ideal work experience, not easily attained. To work toward this goal, you constantly keep in mind the hygiene factors of the work situation. You give daily attention to working conditions, strive to maintain good relationships with your superiors and members of your group and try to work out good solutions to matters under your immediate supervision. You thus hope to avoid job dissatisfactions in your group.

As the person in charge, you do all these things in the normal course of a day. They are expected of you. But, if one of your crew is experiencing inequitable treatment resulting from a work regulation or policy, and you get it squared away, don't expect the crewmember to be motivated by gratitude. The member will simply stop complaining for a while. On the other hand, if you make no provision to meet your crew's needs for esteem and self-growth by recognizing good performance, by assigning work involving opportunity for achievement and real responsibility, etc., you need not expect much motivation from them. It may be difficult to build job satisfiers into their work experiences, but the results can be well worth your efforts.

INCREASING THE DRIVE TO DO THE JOB

It might be helpful at this point for you to ask yourself such questions as "What makes me want to do a better job?" As you think back over your career you ask "Why did I go all-out to do a good job in billet A?" And, "Why did I do a so-so job in billet B?" What makes the difference?

To aid your self-analysis, select the five items from the list below which you believe are important in motivating you to do your best work.

- Getting along well with the people with whom I work
- Having a good supervisor
- Retirement and security benefits
- Feeling that my work is important
- Respect for me as a person
- Opportunity to do interesting work
- Good pay
- Opportunity for self-development and improvement
- High degree of freedom on the job
- Chance for advancement
- Knowing what's going on in the organization
- Chance to produce work of high quality
- Good physical working conditions
- Recognition from the boss when I do a good job
- Steady employment
- Getting good marks on my performance evaluation report so I know how I stand
- Leave, commissary, medical, and dental benefits
- Knowing I will be disciplined if I do a poor job
- Not having to work too hard
- Working under close supervision

five motivational factors you selected with the five most often selected by other people according to the results of a random survey of employed persons.

They are as follows, in the order of importance:

1. Feeling that my work is important
2. Opportunity to do interesting work
3. Opportunity for self-development and improvement
4. Good pay
5. Chance for advancement

The next four motivating factors, ranked in order of response, are:

6. Respect for me as a person
7. Chance to produce work of high quality
8. Knowing what is going on in the organization
9. High degree of freedom on the job

The factors most often put at the bottom of the list are: knowing I will be disciplined if I do a poor job, not having to work too hard, and working under close supervision.

The survey results show that the job content, or the nature of the job, has a greater motivating effect than the job context, or the factors outside the job itself.

Having identified some motivational factors, let's look at what you can do to provide the stimuli that help motivate a person to do a good job.

RECOGNIZE A PERSON'S NEEDS FOR ESTEEM AND SELF-GROWTH

Treat a crewmember as a person of value and worthy of your respect. Provide the member with training and opportunities to progress to more challenging tasks. Recognize individual

responsive, constructive manner. Your positive attitudes about them often bring positive responses from them.

ENRICH A PERSON'S JOB

Increase Responsibility for the Job

Give the authority necessary to carry out the job and allow some individual initiative in the work.

Assign an Entire Unit of Work, When Feasible

By doing a job in its entirety, one sees the job's meaning and purpose and the personal satisfaction and accomplishment of completing the job.

Allow the Person Some Freedom to Carry Out the Work Assigned

As a person gains experience, less close supervision is needed and thus more freedom to do the job can be allowed. People are more involved in their work when they invest their own thoughts and abilities. Expect some mistakes but deal with them constructively as barometers for clarification, corrections, and adjustments, which in turn, lead to learning and progress.

Commend the Person When it is Earned

By your recognition for a job "well done," you reaffirm the self-image as a person of ability and worth. This supports the desire to be somebody—to be a person of value. Although an individual is said to work first for tangible benefits—in the sense that these are necessary to live—one of the chief goals in actual practice is to feel that the person is important and worth something to somebody else. One important source of this feeling is the belief that this person's work is important to others. The leader can create this belief by praising the crew for work well done.

The contrast is equally strong. If the leader never compliments a subordinate for good work it is easy for the subordinate to believe either that the worker never does good work or that the leader is not really interested in good work. Either of these beliefs will cripple a worker's motivation.

The effects of accurate and realistically given praise can be profound. By praising workers, the leader tells them that they are valued members of the group. In addition, almost all naval personnel have learned to value group support and the esteem of their co-workers. When small naval units are rewarded as groups for their good work, and future rewards also are made contingent on good performance, most of the people in the unit will want to do a good job to show the other members they are carrying their share of the workload.

Consider and Value a Person's Ideas and Suggestions

People, whose ideas and suggestions are honestly considered, feel that they are contributing to getting the job done and that they have a personal investment in helping the group accomplish its goal. A person whose own ideas help others reach a decision is more likely to give that decision willing support and acceptance. It all points to one thing: People more willingly carry out decisions in which they have taken an active part. Pride of authorship can be a potent force, for people tend to support what they help create.

A group discussion where alternative proposals are considered and discussed can be helpful. People can express their ideas and at the same time get reasons from others besides the leader as to why their ideas may or may not be good. In most cases, many of the group's ideas can be incorporated in the final solution, and, at the same time, some of the problems you may have overlooked can be solved.

Your people may be aware of problems you didn't consider. There are, indeed, very few

Provide Opportunities for a Person to Progress to More Complex and Difficult Tasks as Experience is Gained

Establish a training program for your people to learn new skills and to gradually assume more challenging jobs. No one likes to be in a dead-end job. People usually like to develop their abilities and to make progress. Teach your crew specific, specialized tasks that increase their skills. A person's self-confidence increases with proficiency.

Show the Work's Purpose

Tell your people the purpose of their work and how it helps meet the overall goal of the ship or activity. Even menial jobs become more significant when people know they are contributing to a higher goal.

INCENTIVES TO PERFORMANCE

USE NEGATIVE INCENTIVES WITH CARE

"How do I build a person's motivation when the job itself is not satisfying?" is a question that you may now be puzzling over. Of course, the Navy can legally force people to carry out its directives. But authority used solely to direct the crews' activities does not effectively motivate them. It is an inefficient way to solicit good performance and should be saved as a last resort for those who cannot otherwise be induced to do good work. The reason is simple. When threats of punishment for poor performance are the leader's primary means for securing good performance, the group learns rather quickly that the objective is not really to do good work but to avoid getting caught doing poor work.

Also, they learn quickly those things for which they are likely to get caught. The end result is a unit that requires extremely close supervision for effective performance.

Negative incentives such as fear, threats, and coercion for good performance must be used

work by causing the person to worry too much about the possible consequences of failure. The more one worries, the less time one has to think about what one is doing, and the more likely one is to fail. If negative incentives are used, as is sometimes necessary, the objective should be to use the smallest force that will ensure the desired outcome.

REWARDS ARE MORE EFFECTIVE THAN FEAR

Some people may appear unwilling, whereas in actuality they aren't. Some military leaders, thinking their people are unwilling, tend to rely heavily on punitive methods for motivating them. Actually military leaders have many effective positive incentives at their disposal. There is evidence that newcomers to the Navy are initially well motivated and will continue to be so if they see that good performance is a means for satisfying their own needs.

People usually work better to achieve desired personal goals than they do to avoid punishment. If they work only to avoid punishment for poor work, their performance tends to be minimal or undependable. Consequently, the leader is then forced to exercise close supervisory control over them if the leader expects their performance to be good. In contrast, if good performance is obtained primarily through the use of positive incentives, such as recognition and rewards for good performance, the leader will build a dependable unit that will work in his absence as well as in his presence. It is highly desirable to use positive incentives to induce good performance whenever it is possible to do so.

DANGERS OF MANIPULATION

Of all the functions of the leader, that of generating good performance is perhaps the most important. People can be induced to do good work in a number of different ways, some proper and some improper.

The manipulative approach is improper. The manipulative leader uses understanding of human behavior to achieve an end without any

recognition and enriching the job but the leader's actions lack conviction; one essential ingredient is missing—sincerity. People who sense that there is no real interest in them as individuals, tend to distrust and question the leader's actions. The best motivation is one's intrinsic satisfaction from the job that is backed by your sincere, positive regard and interest in the crewmember's development and well-being. When such motivation is an active, driving force, your task as a leader is greatly simplified.

WHAT IT TAKES TO BE MOTIVATED

Motivating people to do good work is dependent on four factors:

- The feeling that individuals can succeed if they try
- The belief that the leader will recognize good work either tangibly or intangibly
- The value one places on that recognition
- The individual's estimate of the probability that there will be punishment where there is evidence of not trying

People have little motivation to try something they fear they cannot do. There is evidence that a feeling of inadequacy, an expectation of not being able to cope with the situation, is an important cause of inadequate performance. Deterioration of a person's motivation to try a task results from one's near-certain expectation of failure.

The relation between expectation of success and motivation to try, is not a simple one. Motivation to try usually does not decrease at a constant rate as expectation of success decreases. There is a breaking point; that is, as one feels less and less confident that there will be success, it is likely that the motivation to try will drop slowly until it is felt that there isn't much chance of succeeding and one then quits trying altogether.

leader can help at this point by building the self-confidence of a person through support and encouragement, and particularly by breaking the task down into segments that can be achieved. The individual should understand that there will be no punishment for failing if the best effort has been given to achieve the task. This reassurance is important, especially in combat training or on other very difficult tasks, because people may be encouraged to keep trying and ultimately may succeed, whereas without encouragement they may simply quit.

Once a person is convinced that the chances of success are good enough to warrant the effort required to try, the expectation that success will be rewarded becomes an important consideration. Workers usually are not where they are just for the fun of it. There are definite personal needs that are expected to be satisfied through good performance of the task. If a worker is not sufficiently convinced that good performance is the best way to get these needs satisfied, then the worker usually will have little or no interest in doing the work well. Motivation will be low.

The consistency and appropriateness of the leader's reactions to members' performances are important to the morale and motivation of each member. Good performance should always be recognized in some manner, and poor performance should never be allowed to go uncorrected. The consistency with which a leader reacts to performance lets followers know what to expect.

Consistency requires awareness of the things going on around oneself so that neither exceptionally good nor exceptionally poor performance ever goes unnoticed. A leader's appraisal of a person's performance requires the ability to judge accurately, both the actual performance and the person's capabilities. If a person is judged to have done his best, the leader's reaction should never be negative, no matter how poor the performance. Leaders often overlook this precept, probably because it is easier to measure the end result than the extent of the effort.

performance and success as to another goal factor affecting motivation to work—the an individual places on the recognition that be received upon successful completion assigned tasks. A subordinate logically asks the leader can provide of value as a reward productive task performance. The answer complicated as many routine tasks are during a day or a week, none of which mer tangible reward for successful completion all of which must nevertheless be done. Further, providing tangible rewards for all performances, especially routine tasks, v ultimately cheapen their value in encour good performance on more critical tasks. there would not be enough tangible re available for the leader to use in this manner. Fortunately, intangible rewards are available such as praise for a job well-done, respect consideration of an individual's ideas.

In general, performance is the product of two overall factors, ability and motivation. If ability is high but motivation is low, performance will also be low. Performance will also be low if the ability is low even though motivation is high. You can use your judgment to determine if a person's poor performance is due to low ability or low motivation. If failure is basically the result of low ability, you should identify and provide the extra training to meet subordinate needs. If the failure is attributable to low motivation, the solution is to take whatever actions seem necessary to increase the motivational levels of your people. All failures should never be punished. On the other hand, training should never substitute for corrective action when failure results from an individual's not trying hard enough.

It is your responsibility to apply sanctions—that is, rewards and punishments. Neither sanctions are necessary at times, but the use of punishment or threat of force is relatively ineffective in achieving Navy goals because success depends on the individual initiative of highly trained people pooling their technical specialties. This initiative depends primarily on the use of positive sanctions and incentives and rewards.

Motivated people make your job easier. Motivated people are productive people, for they are self-starting. Motivated people, carry out their duties with dispatch, and they learn new assignments and tasks readily. They are cooperative. These are only some of the reasons why motivated workers are assets to any organization. They not only make your job simpler and easier, but you can usually count on them to give a 100% effort in meeting the group's goal.

You, as an effective leader, can provide the stimuli and set up the favorable conditions that are conducive to increasing your workers' desires to do a good job.

SUMMARY

We have acquired certain needs based on our experiences in growing up in a certain society. Our needs may occur one at a time, several at a time, or in rapid succession. The failure to satisfy the lower level needs will distract attention from the higher level needs.

To satisfy our personal needs, we behave in a manner that brings us rewards and fulfillment.

met. Our two basic needs of survival and security are usually met; therefore, they do not greatly affect our behavior.

Job satisfaction is found in the nature and content of the work itself. Certain factors motivate us on the job. As we can never completely satisfy the needs of esteem and self-growth, they have a continuing power to influence our behavior. As a leader, we should recognize our subordinates' needs for esteem and self growth. We should give our subordinates the authority to carry out a job and allow them to demonstrate personal initiative in their work.

Positive incentives are far more effective than negative incentives in developing motivation. People usually work more efficiently to achieve personal goals when they have positive incentives. However, they will work less efficiently when they are threatened with punishment for substandard work. Efficient workers require less supervision, thus, freeing the supervisor to perform other tasks.

Performance is the product of ability and motivation. If a person has the ability to do the work and is highly motivated, production will be high. If either ability or motivation is low, production will suffer. When production suffers, a unit's mission capability suffers.

CHAPTER 3

PERCEPTION

Why do our concepts of what is real often differ from those of another person? Why do we see things differently?

Our self-concepts may differ from those who know us. A co-worker may see us as ambitious and aggressive while we see ourselves as industrious and conscientious.

We may differ in our opinions of other people. You may see the division officer as hardworking and fair but I may see the same officer as domineering and unfair.

We often differ about events in the outer world. Witnesses to an accident usually have different versions of what happened; and they are convinced their own version is correct.

Consider the picture in figure 3-1. What age woman do you think she is? Is she attractive or ugly? Try an experiment and show the picture to some of your friends. Do they see the same picture? Do some think she is in her late teens or early twenties? Do others think she is about sixty or older? If this is so, how do you account for the disagreements? Now look at figure 3-2. What do you see? Do all agree?

Figures 3-1 and 3-2 are intentionally ambiguous. You can see figure 3-1 as an old hag with a long nose or as a young girl looking away so that you see only an eyelash and a part of her nose. You can see figure 3-2 as a set of profiles or as a goblet.

These figures illustrate a common phenomenon; i.e., that people see things differently, that people wear their own rose-colored glasses.



Figure 3-1.—Perceptual illusion.

191.8

You make the world not as it necessarily is but as you are. You make your own reality; you cannot assume that your facts speak for themselves. Your reality may not correspond to my reality.

Leadership management roles depend in part on how you perceive yourself, how you perceive your subordinates, and how they perceive you.

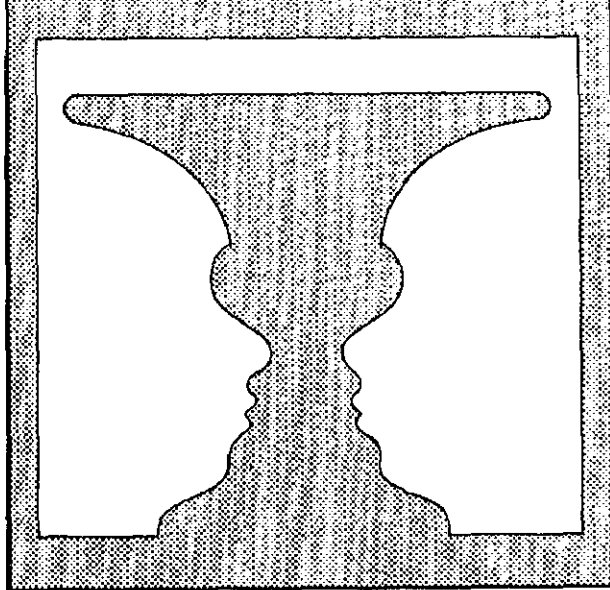


Figure 3-2.—Perceptual illusion.

191.9

This chapter discusses the mental processes you use in making your reality. It discusses the factors that influence your perspectives and what you can do to sharpen your powers of observation.

Sometimes circumstances compel us to accept an unpleasant conclusion. Perhaps the other team clearly outplayed ours. We then see what we would like to avoid. But when the facts are ambiguous and permit different interpretations, we tend to shape our perceptions to support our needs and desires.

THE NATURE OF PERCEPTION OR THE WAY WE SEE THINGS

Your perception is your consciousness of the things that exist or that are taking place around you. It is your ideas and feelings about yourself and other people. Your ideas and beliefs may or may not correspond to reality but they nevertheless influence your behavior.

OF THE OUTER WORLD

You awaken one night to loud shouting sirens plus the strong smell of smoke. You immediately think there is a fire nearby. This is an example of how we continuously search for meaning in the happenings in the environment. This search for meaning is a dominant feature of perception.

Through your ability to perceive you gain a sense of the outer world. Your perceptions act as guideposts that direct your behavior. You evaluate a person or situation, consider the factors that appear advantageous, and recognize the barriers that may block your goals. You then select a course of action.

A person's perceptions play a major role in determining behavior. To influence a subordinate's behavior, you can start by helping him to comprehend that person's perceptions. You consider the factors that helped form them. You thereby better understand the motives and actions that are reflected in perceptions held by that individual.

A person's raw materials for developing social perceptions are personal factors and the external environment. These two determinants are highly interdependent but for analytical purposes we shall look first at the personal factors.

Personal Factors Affect Perception

MOTIVES.—Suppose you are on your way to a restaurant for lunch. Being hungry, you may pay little or no notice to the stores along your way. But after a good meal you may carefully scrutinize the goods displayed in those same stores, providing you are looking for some new clothes.

We are selectively aware of the outer world according to our tensions and motives. We tend to be aware of objects that relate to our needs—both those that are potentially satisfying and those that are potentially unsatisfying.

EMOTIONS.—You have a quarrel with a friend. Your emotions of anger, anxiety, or hostility temporarily color your friendly feelings toward your friend. Let us take another case. You have car trouble; a policeman stops and assists you. The policeman puts out flares, tries to locate the trouble, and then radios for a wrecker. As you are grateful for the help, you tend to perceive policemen favorably. The next day, a policeman stops you and gives you a ticket for speeding. In this case, your perspective of policemen probably becomes less favorable.

PAST EXPERIENCES.—Suppose you had a high school biology teacher who was interesting and knowledgeable. You enjoyed the class lectures. Your thinking was stimulated. Under such guidance, you performed interesting experiments. Now a few years later, your reaction to taking another biology course is probably positive and, perhaps, enthusiastic.

Suppose that your experience was just the opposite. You found the lectures boring and the laboratory experiments uninteresting. Your reaction is likely to be negative when someone suggests that you take another biology course.

Your past experiences influence your perceptions about people and situations. Shakespeare said, "What is past is prologue."

STATE OF THE INNER SELF.—Your mental states of security or insecurity, anxiety or confidence, cooperation or resentment, color your perspectives.

A person who is insecure and anxious sees many things as threatening. One may take offense at a person's casual remark and regard it as a personal snub whereas a more secure person would disregard it completely. One may interpret a person's indifference as dislike or rejection. In contrast, a person who is not insecure may regard a person's hostile behavior as mere indifference.

FRAME OF REFERENCE.—All of your perceptions involve a frame of reference. You evaluate people, objects, and situations in relation to a larger setting or context. Your

Suppose you are visiting a city for the first time and someone asks you for directions to a particular street. The street name likely means nothing to you because you are unable to relate it to any reference point. But, you can probably help if you have a city map. The street location on the map in relation to your present location shown on the map gives you a frame of reference.

We often select reference points that keep us from appearing less admirable, less worthy, or less successful than we want to be. For example, the athletes who don't make the football team tend to compare with the other athletes who didn't make the team either. Or students who flunk a test compare their scores with the others who also flunked.

You acquire your frames of reference from your experiences. You first build concepts of various objects such as dogs, horses, and people. You use these concepts to interpret your experiences. They serve as blueprints for your actions. Then, you learn to classify differences within the general concept. For example, you learn that people vary according to sex, age, position, and personality.

Consider how a child forms the concept of a dog. First, the child learns that the family collie is a dog. This dog has four legs, long fur, a long snout, short upright ears, and a long bushy tail. It barks and is friendly. It is also quite large (larger than the child is, but smaller than the father).

Secure in the notion of what a dog is, the child then confronts a bulldog and finds that the concept must be adjusted. Dogs can be of different sizes. They may have short, ugly snouts. But they still bark, are friendly, and have upright ears.

Then one day the child learns that there is such a dog as a Mexican hairless. An almost radical change occurs in the concept of what a dog is but the resulting picture is a more valid view of the whole class.

are seen they are correctly classified as dogs or non-dogs.

Often concept formation depends more on the width and amount of experience than on the depth of it. Extensive experience with a wide variety of encounters builds up concepts that are valid.

After you learn general concepts and can recognize the variations therein, you have numerous frames of reference. You then apply scales of judgment that you learned through your experiences to that class of objects.

Scales And Standards.—To give your experience meaning, you must develop scales and standards. Let's say, you learn from your parents that "A" grades in school are excellent marks, that "Bs" are good marks, and that "Cs" are fair marks. You form a scale of excellent, good, and fair marks.

Suppose the parents of your friend next door do not have such high academic standards. They tell their daughter that a passing grade of "C" is good and that a "B" grade is excellent. Her standards of school grades are likely to be different from yours.

You establish standards for the important aspects of your life such as status of positions, rates of pay, and acceptable behavior. You form scales and judgments from your unique experiences.

You may revise your standards as you undergo new experiences and acquire additional evidence. For example, people once considered a car's 30 mph speed to be fast. Today's standards are much higher. Also, each time a track star sets a new world record, the former records no longer seem as impressive to us.

Despite new evidence or changed circumstances, some people may still adhere to their judgments. When this happens, their perceptions no longer fit the new reality.

Judgments.—People tend to play down or to disregard behaviors that do not support their

as we emphasize those features that agree with our judgments and we often screen out those features with which we disagree. People who believe that professors are absentminded, that intellectuals are dull, or that the young are irresponsible are apt to perceive these characteristics in their behavior. Conversely, they are apt to overlook or deem insignificant those characteristics that do not support their beliefs.

In our judgments, we are not necessarily aware of the scales and standards we have adopted. If we evaluate a person's behavior as disloyal, we often cannot indicate the point where loyalty changes to disloyalty. Often we are unable to rationally describe the standards that we use to make our judgments.

Our judgments often hinge on the particular frame of reference we select. For example, a teenager may see smoking as physically harmful and to be avoided, or the teenager may see smoking as a means of winning acceptance from friends who smoke. The first frame of reference is that smoking is harmful. The second is that smoking with friends will help gain their acceptance.

People often disagree because they apply different frames of reference to a particular object or situation. When they agree on the facts, they usually have the same reference points.

External Factors Affect Our Perception

We cannot perceive everything in our external environment; rather, we select some objects for our attention while we ignore others. There are a number of conditions in the physical environment that help direct our attention to a particular object.

- **Intensity**—You will likely notice objects of high intensity. For example, an advertisement with bright colors is likely to attract your attention.

moving object. An advertisement with a moving figure is likely to be noticed.

- Repetition—You also notice something that is repeated. You may have to call out a friend's name several times before you gain your friend's attention. But, you may ignore something that is repeated too often.

- Contrast—You are more likely to notice an object that contrasts with its surroundings than one that blends with its surroundings. For example, you are apt to notice a black sheep in a flock of white ones.

Our Culture Influences Our Perceptions

The social institutions, language, attitudes, values, and ideals of the culture in which we live greatly influence our thinking as we grow up and also, the ways in which we are encouraged to behave. We learn most of our social values, behaviors, and work attitudes from our particular social and cultural environments. To illustrate, there are incidents in American history where settlers' children were kidnapped and reared by an Indian tribe. These children completely adopted the attitudes and values of the Indian tribe's culture.

Within a culture, there are smaller components called subcultures. These subcultures also have their own customs and values. A boy of Norwegian descent living on a farm in Minnesota and a boy of Irish descent living in New York City live in the same culture, the Western culture, but their subcultures are decidedly different. Thus, some of their ideas and attitudes about life and people may differ.

We learn much about people and life from a basic cultural unit, our family. From our parents we learn what is right and wrong, ways to behave, and many of our values.

People adopt certain views of life according to their unique experiences in the overall culture, community, the family, and the institutions that develop in them.

TO SEE THINGS

We mentally reconstruct the world in terms of our needs. We attach greater significance to a compliment from a superior than one from a co-worker. We likewise worry more about criticism from a superior than from a co-worker. We perceive both according to the importance each holds relevant to our needs for security and approval.

We tend to see what we want to see and to believe what we want to believe. We like to emphasize the things we find pleasant and to screen out the things we find disturbing or unpleasant.

Screening Out Undesirable or Unpleasant Things

Think back to a past experience of yours. You usually tend to de-emphasize the unpleasant. People tend to put out of mind or postpone unpleasant chores such as doing a tedious, repetitious job or completing a boring report. We prefer to ignore or evade those things that we find disturbing. Sometimes this works to our advantage. For example, most of us can screen out mildly disturbing noises while we work.

Emphasizing the Desirable and Pleasant Things

Conversely, we like to recall the things we found pleasant and satisfying. You perhaps remember the happy times of a past friendship more than the disagreements or arguments. You may likewise overlook your appointment with the dentist but you are less apt to forget a date to go fishing with a friend.

Emphasizing the positive has its advantages. Most of us, in time of adversity, will try to make the best of the situation.

Making the Outer World Coincide With Our Needs and Desires

We are at the World Series rooting for our team. Each time our team starts winning, an umpire wipes it out by a close decision. We

Know umpires sometimes make mistakes but all their close calls favor the other team! Our team gets no breaks from the umpires. Actually, they are objectively calling the plays as they see them. We, however, see the situation as we want to see it. One of our pitchers throws a called "ball" but we see it as a strike. The umpire calls an opposing player safe at homeplate but we easily see the player as "out."

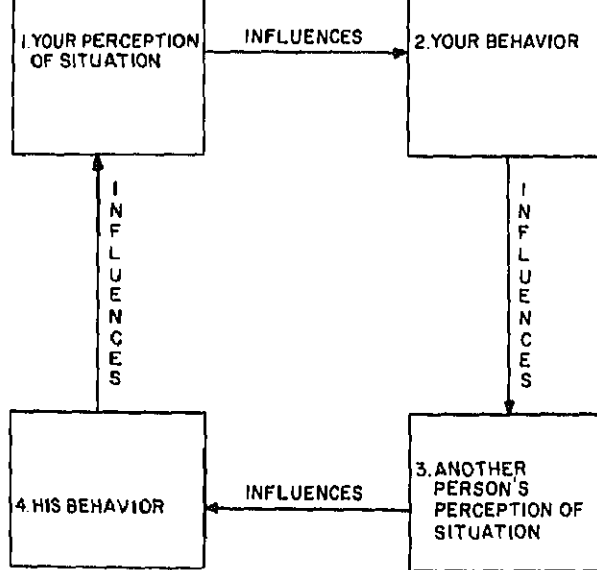
EFFECTS OF VARIANCES IN PERCEPTION

Suppose you ask your superior for guidance on a work project but your superior brusquely responds "Can't talk to you now!" and then walks away frowning. What is your immediate reaction? Do you become angry at him? Do you feel a sense of rejection and lowered esteem? Do you ask yourself, "If he thought well of me, would he treat me this way?" or "Is he mad at me?"

When you relate the situation to your personal feelings, you modify your behavior and attitude toward your superior. You may withdraw—"I'll never ask HIM for any help!" You may react aggressively—"He's stupid and rude!" You may feel fearful and insecure—"Is he going to transfer me?" You may perceive a loss of approval and become depressed, unable to give your full attention to your job. The resultant behavior toward your superior stems from your subjective perception.

These reactions tend to create similar reactions and behavior from your superior. Your superior revises personal perceptions according to your changed attitudes and behavior. For example, your feelings of depression may be interpreted by your supervisor to be laziness or your objection to being supervised. If unchecked, these subjective reactions create a destructive cycle for the people involved. Figure 3-3 shows the interpersonal perceptual cycle.

Later, you may discover reasons for the superior's behavior that are totally unrelated to you. Your perception shifts from your inner feelings and emotions to external factors that



191.10

Figure 3-3.—Interpersonal perceptual cycle.

account for this behavior. Perhaps the superior was preoccupied with a high-priority problem or had other pressing matters to consider. Then, you consider the supervisor's behavior more objectively. It is usually a good idea to look beyond your subjective assessment to a rational, objective interpretation. Our inner feelings of personal unworthiness, insecurity, or depression, often distort reality and may impair our relationships with others. In contrast, our perceptions of others' recognition, approval, or support help create positive perceptual cycles that improve human relationships.

OUR PERCEPTIONS SOMETIMES DISTORT REALITY

We have seen that we restructure reality in ways that suit our motives and desires. We want to believe something even though the facts may not support our beliefs.

We often select those aspects of a situation that are in line with our attitudes and beliefs. On the other hand, we tend to dismiss those aspects

occurs when our attitudes and beliefs are automatically loaded in one direction.

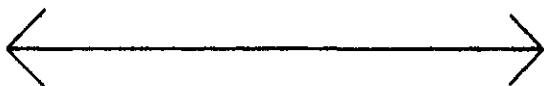
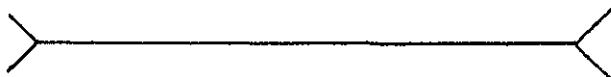
This selective distortion of reality is unintentional. It occurs subconsciously and serves to defend the self from lowered esteem in our own eyes. It enhances our good image of ourselves.

Let us look at a hypothetical example of how mental self-defense works. A shipmate of yours is assigned the billet you thought you were going to get. How easy for you to say to yourself, "I really don't care but I'd sure hate to pull strings the way he did to get it!"

Let us consider next an example of self-enhancement. Suppose you and your partner win a game of tennis. You say to yourself, "Gee, I'm really good! Why, I practically won that match all by myself!" Perhaps you were that good; on the other hand, you may think that way even if you only did your share to win the game. We often change reality to enhance the self.

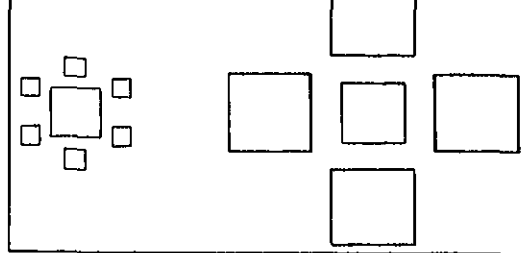
Illusions

Our physical senses deceive us. We see a fishing pole as bent if it sticks into the water at a certain angle. We know a magician's tricks are illusions, even though our eyes tell us differently. The movement we see in motion



191.11

Figure 3-4.—Perceptual Illusion.



191.12

Figure 3-5.—Perceptual Illusion.

pictures is an illusion for picture stills merely follow one another rapidly. Which line in figure 3-4 seems longer? Actually, the two lines are equal in length. Are the two center squares in figure 3-5 the same size? No, they are not!

We liberally interpret what we think exists, not only in the physical environment but in the social environment as well. We may misread factors in a social environment and form misleading impressions of people. For example, in a group of unusually competent persons, a person of average abilities may seem poor or unsatisfactory.

Expectations

Often we build hopes and expectations to such an extent that we misinterpret reality. Suppose you expect to be transferred and are eagerly awaiting orders. One day you hear rumors that a new chief in your rate will report in a few months. You decide your transfer is imminent and you start making plans. Later, you discover that the new chief will report aboard on TAD for 4 weeks.

Our expectations stem from our needs and may be out of phase with reality. A lovesick youth expects his girlfriend to marry him even though she shows him only mild interest. A first class who passes the E-7 examination rushes out to buy new uniforms and tells friends that the advancement is guaranteed.

We all tend to place people into broad categories and to assign them common traits. We stereotype people by putting them collectively into neat compartments. We are probably familiar with common stereotypes; the absentminded professor; the unconventional artist; the romantic, easygoing Latin; the hot-tempered redhead. We automatically endow a person belonging to a general group with the traits of the stereotype.

Whenever we react to individuals in terms of our stereotyped pictures of them, we are probably reacting to something that isn't there.

The real admiral is a human being with a certain number of stripes. The stereotyped admiral is an imaginary picture in people's minds. The real college professor is a human being who teaches classes in a university. The stereotyped college professor is a man with a beard who is likely to be absentminded enough to throw his pipe out the window and smoke his match.

Whenever we react to an individual on the basis of our stereotyped pictures, we are reacting to our own mental images and not to reality. Admirals, redheads, and college professors are likely to resent this.

If the traits of a person differ from our mental picture, we tend to call the person an exception. On the other hand, several persons who fit our stereotype reinforce our thinking.

Stereotypes hamper accurate perceptions. You should base your perceptions of a person on the individual's particular merits, characteristics, and abilities.

Your perceptions are more tuned to reality if you arrive at judgments relatively uncolored by stereotyped thinking.

Erroneous Perspectives

You see things in comparison with other objects, either directly or indirectly. A 6'3" basketball player appears taller in a group of medium-height men than he does in a group of basketball players who average 6'3".

you compare the subordinate with others of similar experience and training. Consider the evidence, apply common standards, and analyze your people objectively.

"Halo" Effect

We all tend to let one strong impression of a person's characteristics color our judgments of unrelated characteristics. Our personal liking of a person may influence us to rate that person as intelligent, hardworking, and efficient. Carried to the extreme, the person may be our "fair-haired boy," who can do no wrong. Or suppose a person's high, squeaky voice irritates us. Through the "halo" effect, we may rate the person low in ability, efficiency, and cooperation. The "halo" effect biases our attitudes either favorably or unfavorably. How to avoid the "halo" effect is discussed later.

"Filling-in" Missing Facts

You catch a glimpse of a friend walking down the street. You hurry to greet her, tap her on the shoulder, and when she turns around, much to your embarrassment she's a complete stranger! Or you judge that a person walking ahead is a 20-year-old from her hair, attire, and general appearance. How surprised you are when she turns around and she is 40 plus! We often base our perceptions on reduced cues; we "fill-in" missing facts that may or may not be correct.

IMPROVING YOUR PERCEPTIONS

When you more accurately perceive another person's thoughts and feelings, you increase your understanding of that person.

Improving your perceptions is an ongoing process. It requires your patience, perseverance, and earnest efforts. It is a mental process that challenges your willingness and capacity to understand yourself and others from a broad perspective.

Empathy is the ability to project yourself mentally into the world of another human being. You interpret the stimuli of that person's world and see that world from that person's point of view while holding in abeyance your own viewpoint.

To have empathy with other people, you must ask yourself:

What are their perspectives?

What are their feelings and emotions?

What makes them feel the way they do?

What are their needs and desires?

When you have empathy with your people, you show a genuine concern for their self-interests. You demonstrate a respect for their holding viewpoints different from your own. This shows your basic respect for another person's worth and dignity.

You can deal with your people more effectively when you develop your capacity for empathy. This involves listening to them, listening for the clues that give you an insight into their inner worlds. You are then better equipped to channel their energies toward the common objective.

RECOGNIZE EVIDENCE OR FACTS

What is a fact? The question sounds simple but its answer is complex.

A fact is an intricate thing. It takes a clearheaded person to tell the difference between a fact and other things that look like facts. It is a good idea to think carefully about what a fact is and how you can tell one from things that often pass for facts.

- Facts are based on observation. Before facts can be established, somebody looks, feels, hears, smells, or touches.

system. What you see when you look at a ship is in your brain. What goes on in the visual part of your brain may be influenced by

The ship

The conditions of observation

The condition of your eyes

The condition of your nerves

The condition of the brain

You may naturally assume that what you see is the actual ship—that the color of the ship is the only thing that determines what goes on in your head. Let's look at each of the above items to see the many ways you could get fooled.

Conditions of observation—The ship in shadow looks differently than it does in bright sunlight. A ship at 2 miles may seem to have a different color than it does up close. (Camouflage tries to capitalize on conditions of observation so that the enemy is fooled about the facts.)

Conditions of the eye—If the eye isn't functioning properly, almost anything can happen to observation. All ships may look gray. Or there may be no ship there at all as far as you are concerned.

Conditions of the optic nerve—Unless the optic nerve is operating correctly you will probably see no ship.

Conditions of the brain—Goings-on in the brain can do strange things to observation. The brain causes some people to see strange things or to hear voices from the dead or to perceive themselves as misunderstood Napoleons. In a less strange way, our brains can make us see our ships as the most beautiful in the Navy, our spouses as the prettiest or most handsome in the world, ourselves as very unusual and gifted people.

How, then, do we know if what we see is really there? The only way to increase certainty as to the color of the ship is for a number of people to agree. If the conditions of observation are satisfactory and a number of people agree the ship is gray, you have a high degree of certainty that the ship is gray.

based on several observations. You should be suspicious of single observations and the quick conclusions some people make. Similarly, a single observer may make several faulty observations. However, under emergency conditions, a single observation by one person may have to serve.

Facts and Opinions

Opinions, like facts, are often based on observation. But opinions are personal affairs. Facts are impersonal, agreed-upon things. When you alone look at the ship, you come up with an opinion that it is gray. It doesn't become a fact until it is verified by others. Single observations lead only to opinions.

Most opinions are charged with emotion. They involve not only observation but also evaluation. They are stated in such terms as "good," "bad," "useless," "ugly," "She is a good petty officer" or "He's the best CO" or "She has an ugly disposition." Such emotional opinions are easy to recognize. But they are sometimes accepted as facts.

"Texas is a good state" the Texan says, firmly convinced that he is stating a basic fact about Texas. "Texas is not a good state," the Californian answers. Then follows an unpleasant argument about the "facts." See figure 3-6.

Suppose the Texan had said, "I like Texas," or "Of course, this is a matter between me, a unique individual, and Texas, a unique state, but somehow I find myself liking the place." That is what his original statement means, and about all it means. If he said it that way, not even a Californian would feel moved to put him straight about the "facts" regarding Texas, California, or states in general.

Statements such as "He's an excellent division officer" or "This picture is beautiful" or "This steak is overcooked" are not facts about the division officer, the picture, or the steak but are the speaker's reaction to them. When you hear someone use "is" in this way, mentally preface the remarks with "it seems to that person that. . ."

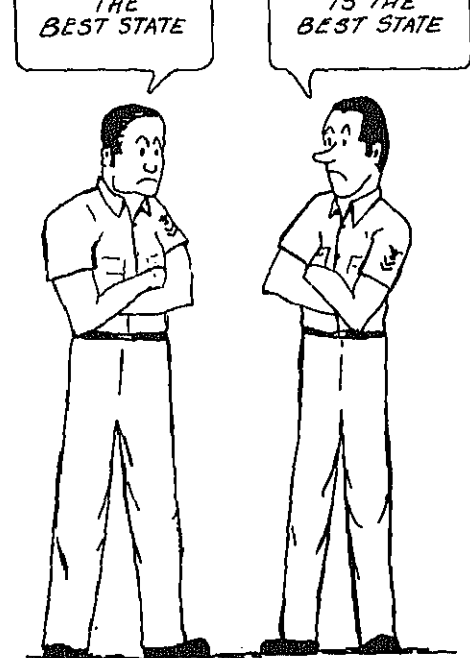


Figure 3-6.—Absolute opinion statement.

If these and similar statements were given a factual basis, they would be expressed something like this:

"Ninety percent of his shipmates judge him to be an excellent division officer."

"All of us at the table agreed the steak was overcooked."

Facts and Abstractions

Abstractions disguised as facts confuse the thinking process. We continually talk about people—particularly—in abstract terms.

An abstraction is an attribute or characteristic that cannot be seen. Nobody can see honesty, love, intelligence, or human nature. These abstract terms are far removed from facts. Each abstract term is used to summarize and represent a lot of complicated

abstractions. But if we want to arrive at the facts, we must think about things that can be seen, heard, or felt.

In talking factually about people, we must talk in terms of what people do. You can generally get agreement among observers as to what a person does. But when you get involved with what the person is, you can expect confusion. You say CPO Baker is generous. Your friend disagrees. You both may argue for hours about the matter.

One chance you have to settle the argument is to reach agreement on what you each mean by the term "generous" and to then look at Chief Baker's behavior. You can see it and agree you see it. But when you forget the facts and go in for abstractions only, you are likely to end up with this disagreement.

It is often possible to recognize facts by the sort of language they are dressed in. Judgments run to adjectives and abstractions. Facts come in simple nouns and verbs. Factual and nonfactual language about people presents quite a study in contrasts. Take, for example, the following two passages drawn from actual wartime descriptions of Navy people.

1. LANGUAGE OF OPINION

"He is a man who is characterized by the most versatile incompetence I have ever seen. He is bigoted, he is stupid, and he is lazy. He dresses sloppily and the relation between him and his men is one of mutual disrespect. He is a discredit to the uniform he wears and I can think of nothing that would improve the Navy so much as the dismissal of this character."

2. LANGUAGE OF FACT

"During the last 2 years this man has been changed five times from one sort of duty to another. Each of his five immediate superiors in the five billets has requested his transfer 'because of his incompetence.' This man's IQ as

was 113 on one form of test, 118 on the other. Four times in the last seven months this man has been put on report for being out of uniform. He has had his only pair of dress trousers pressed once in the past three months and he has worn them exactly sixteen times, etc., etc."

CULTIVATE OBJECTIVITY

Objectivity is tied directly to the observation process. Observation is a relationship between a person and some aspect of the world.

If the observer has a smoothly functioning, and unemotional nervous system, an objective observation will be made. This means, essentially, that if a number of people in the same state were brought in, they would agree with the first observer. One observes objectively when other calm and unemotional people agree with the observation.

An observation is termed subjective, rather than objective, when emotion or bias plays a part.

The human being is prone to subjectivity when observing and interpreting actions. Remember the saying that one sees the world not as it is but as a mirror of oneself? Biases, prejudices, hopes, fears, likes, dislikes, and needs undeniably create distorted perceptions. Studies of people furnish evidence to support this notion. For example, an experiment showed that a 50-cent piece looked decidedly larger than its actual size to youngsters to whom 50 cents represented a small fortune. In contrast, the well-heeled youngsters underestimated the coin's size.

There are many instances of subjective thinking in everyday life. Home cooking is better if you've been exposed to hamburger joints for a long time.

The emotions of the observer, whether of a hidden or an overt variety, are powerful agents in creating peculiar observations. These emotions, desires, peculiar habits of thought, are hard to detect and to allow for. They often sneak into our observing process unnoticed.

another human being, rarely can one stifle the distorting influence of the emotional relationship.

Let's consider the way one CPO might characterize another. Suppose we say it is factually established that the chief petty officer being observed is 5'2", spends about half the time on the telephone, spends an average 10 hours per week drinking coffee in the CPO Mess, and refuses to take a chance on a football pool. These are facts. They are the facts the CPO's jealous rival observes.

A friend of the CPO comes along and observes that this CPO wears the Distinguished Service Medal, is known to have invented a new device to improve the effectiveness of mine detection, and that 99% of the people in the section express great respect and admiration for the medal holder. These, too, are facts.

Which set of facts are observed depends on the observer. The objective observer tries to get all the facts and thus, the true estimate of the CPO is likely to be quite different from that of either the CPO's friend or a jealous rival.

While the effects of bias are most dramatic when people are judging other people, or judging themselves, bias is often involved in judgments of impersonal matters, too. If you want to learn the facts about the performance of a certain destroyer, you would not put full weight on the observations of the commanding officer known to be partial to the ship. The person who plans a training program is not the best one to judge its effectiveness. You could probably not completely trust a man's appraisal of his wife's virtues or her shortcomings. And, if you want objective thinking, you would never pick a baseball fan of the Hometown Aces to umpire one of their games.

Objectivity and the Defense of the Ego

People have a need to get questions answered. Unfortunately, a person often accepts the first answer that comes along.

answer. The ego is invested in the answer and it defends itself by finding those facts, and only those facts, that support the desired answer.

We see this ego-defending bias in arguments. The typical argument begins when one person declares "I believe so-and-so. . . ." The second participant then states "I believe the opposite." The stage is thus set for a showdown in which each is committed to a stand. People seek those facts and principles that support their arguments. When one is defending a point of view, the other is thinking up reasons why that point of view is right. When the first person pauses, the second one steps in to cite the alleged facts that have been thought up.

Arguments rarely solve anything. They usually end up with each of the participants more sure than ever about the rightness of the original stand. Once a person takes a stand on a question, that person is no longer in a position to observe impartially the facts relevant to the case.

Discussions, on the other hand, often produce positive results. A discussion typically begins when one person says "I wonder. . . ." This starts the hunt for evidence. The second person says "I wonder, too, if. . . ." Then the two of them pool observations. They may reach some tentative conclusions. Because neither has taken a definite stand, because neither has invested the ego in a set belief, the discussion can result in the discovery of new and relevant facts.

An objective person suspects the objectivity of personal beliefs. Checks of observations are made with others. One person mentally steps into the other person's shoes and tries to see things with the other person's eyes. And when conclusions are reached they are not everlasting conclusions in which the ego is invested. They are tentative conclusions, to be modified when there are new facts or new circumstances.

Be Wary of Generalizations

Most of us, if we are not careful, tend to take one quick look at a person and then make overall statements about people in particular or human nature in general. "Aviators are a wild, irresponsible bunch. I know for I lived with one of them for 18 months." "People with college educations make the best CPOs. Look at Boatswain's Mate Able."

Generalizations of this kind often confuse and distort facts. Limited observations of a person are not enough to generalize accurately about people and may lead to the stereotyped thinking that we discussed.

CULTIVATE A READINESS FOR CHANGE

A person with a good perception of reality suspects readymade answers, seeks evidence, recognizes evidence when it is found, and strives to ensure objectivity in observing and interpreting. When new evidence is uncovered adjustments in thinking are made and action is taken if deemed necessary. This willingness to do something on the basis of evidence tells a good deal about how well a person is adjusted to life. *It means a healthy willingness to cast aside from any status quo which new evidence shows to be outdated.*

Life is a process. Things are continually fermenting, continually interacting, continually altering. Some changes are so small they may have little significance—like the day-to-day changes in a maple leaf, or a change in your appearance between yesterday and today. You may wait a month or a year or maybe even a decade for a change of importance to become apparent. But change happens, and the person who acts as if yesterday were the same as today, or that this year is the same as last year, is likely holding old answers to new and different problems.

We all know people who resist change. We

believe that our answers are final answers, we consciously or unconsciously protest against any change that makes it necessary for us to find new answers.

If we admit that change is permanent, we have to admit that answers are temporary. The answers that were good 10 years ago or even last year may not be adequate answers today.

A readiness for change does not mean a violent opposition to all aspects of the status quo. The raving radical who opposes all current ways of doing things and the person who would change nothing at all are equally apt to be unhappy.

The person who recognizes change when it happens is a wise person. If one accepts change when it is inevitable, one has a better chance of greater personal satisfaction and being a more effective person in task performance.

ASK QUESTIONS THAT PRODUCE THE FACTS

A scientist, being skeptical and striving for objectivity, asks questions. He has learned the art of asking questions that produce useful answers. You can develop this art by keeping in mind the following points.

Watch Your "Why" Questions

If you really want to know why something happened, don't start by asking "why?" Questions beginning with "why" may be ambiguous. They don't suggest how an answer may be gotten. A scientist is wary of "why" questions. He likely asks "when" or "under what circumstances?"

"Why does the sun rise?" This question is of little value until it is translated into other questions. Leave it "why" and you may end up with the answer "God wills it." This may be the

between the sun's rising and the moon's rising?" "How much does the time of the sun's rising change from day to day?" "Does the sun really rise?" These questions can be answered and have been. When people learned to ask relevant questions about the behavior of heavenly bodies, useful answers resulted. Celestial navigation is one practical result.

Break Big Questions Into Smaller Ones

"Why do my crewmembers get into trouble when they go ashore?" This question may produce such answers as: "They are just a troublesome bunch." Or, "I certainly drew a sorry crew." Or, "That town breeds trouble."

"They are troublemakers" is not an adequate answer. Nor is "It's a trouble-breeding town." Life is more complicated than that. A complicated, adequate answer likely results when the "why" question is made into other questions. Ask "When and where do they get into trouble?" "Under what circumstances do they get into trouble?" These questions call for facts. When you get the facts, the questions of "why" will usually be covered.

The procedure for a problem situation may be as follows:

Situation: The crew is in trouble again.

Problem: Why does the crew get in trouble so often?

Answer: They are troublemakers.

Action: Put them in the brig.

An alternate procedure might be this:

Situation: Members of the crew are in trouble again.

Problem: To get the facts about the crew's alleged misbehavior to prevent recurrence.

Answer: Various members have been reported for brawling the last four times the ship was in port.

Question: Under what circumstances does this fighting occur?

Answer: Drunkenness has apparently been a factor in only two of the four cases. The fighting has been among Navy people, not between Navy and civilians. In each of the four instances the crew has been ashore with those from our cruiser escort. The fighting is set off when the cruiser crew make derogatory remarks about our carrier and imply uncomplimentary things about our skipper.

Question: Who gets in the most trouble?

Answer: The fighting is apparently started by the crew from the engine-room, a unit of known high morale.

Conclusion: The crew gets in trouble when the ship is ridiculed. This suggests good morale among the crew, a characteristic that might be hurt by severe punishment.

Alternative Actions:

- (1) Controlling the behavior of the engineroom ringleaders.
- (2) Controlling the time the crew have liberty.
- (3) Controlling the ridicule.
- (4) Controlling whatever it is that produces the ridicule.
- (5) Destroying the morale of the crew so that they do not feel sufficiently proud of their ship to fight for it.
- (6) Demonstrating to the crew that there is a way to squash ridicule without resorting to fists.

produce facts makes life complicated. But life is complicated. Questions that allow for this complexity lead to factual answers and more effective action. In contrast, "why" questions are generally answered by an oversimplified "because."

The careful and persistent asking of fact-demanding questions—questions about "who," "when," "how many," and "under what circumstances," is one sure way to get better answers.

Watch Your Abstract Questions

Some questions contain undefined terms. Such questions confuse people.

"What is good management?" A scientist would never be drawn into trying to answer such a query.

The scientist would hang up on that word "good." What does it mean? It simply means that the person using it has some sort of favorable reaction to whatever it is that is being called good.

"He performs well," you may say. This statement, by itself, conveys little to you for you or I may assign different meanings to the words "good" or "well." Such words are often inadequate tools for communication because the people using them may have different backgrounds, points of view, or standards.

LEARN TO USE CLASSIFICATIONS

The world is confusing. People are continually trying to come to grips with it, to make sense out of it.

The chief device for making sense out of a confused environment is classification. Human beings cannot keep track of the enormous variety of events and objects about them if they have to study each one individually, if they have to react to each one with a separate and unique reaction. They group things together. They put the sheep in one class and the goats in another, the reds here and the blues there, and have one reaction for sheep, one for goats, one for red, one for blue.

time—and advances. The scientists and their cousins, the clearheaded laymen, have learned how to handle classification and to turn it to useful ends. The classification process must be understood before it can be a servant to the problem-solver.

Let's look at black and white. Something is either black or white, we may say. Simple. Also unrealistic. To illustrate, you could arrange a stack of cards beginning at one end with an indisputably black card and going through dozens of steps of light black to light-light black to dark-dark gray to dark gray to gray to light gray to light-light gray and so on to one clearly white. Faced with such an array, how could you ever decide where black leaves off and white begins? Or, if you want finer classification, how do you decide where gray ends and light gray begins?

Classification is Arbitrary

Classifications begin to look arbitrary. We've got to draw the line somewhere, but wherever we draw it, the division is based on opinion only. There will always be some cards in one category barely different from cards in the next category but someone's opinion puts them in one category or the other. This sort of arbitrariness happens every time we classify. And we classify continually. How do we ever succeed then, in getting a realistic picture of the world?

We have seen that scientists classify. Since science seems to work there can't be much basically wrong with classification. What is wrong is that it is too often done with complete unawareness of how classification can warp reality. So often we see an object, hurriedly assign it to a class and behave toward it as if it were identical with all other members of that class. That's where the trouble begins. All members of the class "recruit" are not alike. All members of the class "CPO" are not alike.

Classification and Purpose

When we classify we put together things that are the same. But what things are the same depends on the classifiers and their purposes at

somebody's clothes in casual conversation, for example, forty discernably different shades of white may all be "white," twenty shades of gray can all be "gray," and twenty shades of black are just plain "black." We do not need any more precise classification for conversational purposes. A white-gray-black system is enough. But if we wanted to pick a grayish paint for ships, a paint that would work best for camouflage, we would not use so broad a classification. The grays that are the same for casual remarks about clothes become vastly different when our purpose changes, when a shade of gray barely different from another shade of gray may mean the difference between losing or saving a ship.

The meaning of "same" varies widely. To handle classification without courting confusion requires a clear notion of how we are using "same" and "different" at any given time. All aircraft carriers are the same if the Secretary of the Navy is reporting to the President the number of U.S. aircraft carriers afloat. "Same" means here that all aircraft carriers are different from submarines, destroyers, and landing craft. But all aircraft carriers are not the same if the problem is to pick one to form a part of a fast task force. When the purpose changes, the meanings of "same" and "different" change. All naval officers are the same for purposes of distinguishing them from enlisted persons. But if the Naval Military Personnel Command regarded them all as "same" when it assigned them to duty, we might end up with a flight surgeon in command of the Seventh Fleet.

JUDGE PEOPLE ACCURATELY

There are several rules to follow in making accurate judgments of people. These rules apply whether you are judging how well a person is doing a job, how intelligent a person is, or whether a person deserves recognition or a reprimand.

Don't be a Quack

Some people supposedly can tell you all about yourself by studying the length of your

pupil. While there is some evidence that keen judges of people can make shrewd guesses about personality from studying facial expression or handwriting or walking gait, the connection between these surface things and personality is overrated.

Many people have pet ways of judging character. Some say "Study the eyes—they really tell you about the person." Others say "I don't like a person who has a weak handshake. That person lacks character." Or "I had him transferred—he never could look me in the eye."

These ways of reading character are absurd. There is no scientific evidence for any of them.

Look at Behavior

The only way to accurately judge a person is to look at what that person does. This point counteracts the use of superstitions and old prejudices.

It isn't the color of a person's hair or the set of a person's chin or the height of a person's forehead that tells you what that person is. It's what a person does. The most scientifically demonstrated way to accurately describe a person is to study that person's behavior.

Study a Big Sample of a Person's Behavior

"He's a dishonest man. He once told me a deliberate lie."

What's wrong with this statement? You hear this kind of statement almost every day. It illustrates another way people's judgments can distort reality.

Does one seemingly dishonest act make a person forever dishonest? Does one act of bravery make a person forever brave? Does doing one job well make a person competent? If a person fails a task once, is that person unreliable? If one loses one's temper on one occasion, does that mean the person is hot-tempered? You would think so, judging from the statements some people make.

tendency to bravery or dishonesty or hotness of temper unless you see more than one instance of such behavior.

Before pinning a long-lasting label on a person, make sure there is a long-lasting tendency there. You can be sure of a long-lasting tendency only if you observe the person over a period of time.

Be Suspicious of Your Prejudices

We all have certain preferences and prejudices about people. For some reason unknown even to ourselves, we dislike some people the first time we see them. There are others that we just as automatically like. There are many people who are special to us—our friends, our family, our crews. It is natural, human, that we are biased toward these people.

We see people through colored glasses—either the rosy ones of friendship and favor, the green ones of envy, or maybe the gray ones of dislike. When we look at people, we don't see these people as they are but as we are.

You have a sailor in your crew whom you like. You don't know exactly why, but you just like the sailor. Your commanding officer asks you how good a worker that person is. Aren't you likely to give the individual a few breaks in the evaluation?

You have another person who continually irritates you. The person does the work well but it is obvious that the person doesn't like you or the Navy and makes no effort to hide it. Would you be fairminded enough to give this person a rating solely on the quality of the work done or will your bias influence your judgment? Unless you are careful, your bias is apt to influence your thinking.

About the only way to avoid bias in your judgments is to check your judgments with an outsider. You get someone who neither likes nor dislikes the person to come in, study the situation, and make a judgment.

umpire. They come close to objectivity only if they are aware of their biases and they make a wholehearted attempt to make allowances, accordingly.

When you make judgments about people, mentally put yourself in the shoes of an umpire. Ask yourself, "What would an impartial observer say in this case?" This will help keep your biases out of your judgments.

Watch the Relativity of Your Judgment

Whenever you judge anything—whether a person, a movie, or a ship, your judgment is always a comparison. When you say that Seaman Jones is a good sailor, you unconsciously compare Jones to other sailors you have known. Relative to these other individuals, Jones is a good sailor.

All judgment is relative. In comparison to the K-rations you have on a search and rescue mission, the CPO mess is wonderful. But if you dine in fancy French restaurants for 6 weeks, the wonderful CPO food seems less tasty. A destroyer looks large if you have just transferred from a minesweeper. But the same destroyer seems cramped to you if you have transferred from an aircraft carrier.

You exercise comparative reasoning in judging people. Suppose you must rate the overall proficiency of an Electrician's Mate, second class. You decide that compared to your proficiency and that of other CPOs you know, this EM is inefficient. So you give the individual a poor rating. Suppose you evaluate the person another way. You decide that compared to Electrician's Mates 10 years ago, this EM is above average. There's a third way to make your judgment. How does this EM compare to the second class Electrician now in the Navy? The answer is "excellent." The judgment you make depends on what you are using as a comparison. (Which of the above comparisons would you say is a fair one?)

When you judge anybody or anything, you are making a comparison. You are making a relative judgment. To make a good judgment, you must be aware of what you are using as a comparison. And you should be sure that the standard you are using is a fair one.

When you talk about the qualities of a person, it is a good idea to tell your listener what standards you are using. Instead of saying a person is a "good sailor," it is better to say "compared to other people aboard ship, I think this individual is a good sailor," or "compared to other individuals of limited experience, this person does a good job." If you tell me merely "that person is a good individual," I, the listener, don't know much about the person. All I know is that you, using some standard of judgment unknown to me, think an individual is good. That is of little help to me if I need to know whether to use the person on a special job.

Judge One Trait at a Time

To counter the previously discussed "halo effect," which is the tendency to let an overall favorable impression, or an overall unfavorable impression bias our judgments, it is a good idea to judge a person one trait at a time. No person is likely to be very high or very low on all traits. A good description of a person can be made if you take one trait such as "energy" and compare that person on that trait with other people in your unit. That's the thing that makes a person outstanding. But on intelligence, how does outstanding rate? When judging intelligence, bear in mind that intelligent behavior and energetic behavior are not the same thing. Now how does the person compare in practical intelligence with others on the ship? And so on for other traits in which you are interested. Take them one at a time. Remember that fair-haired individuals are not necessarily completely fair. And remember that everyone has some good traits. The good judge of people doesn't put "horns" or "halos" on anybody.

Watch Out for Abstract Words

We have said that the person who is a good

judgments of people come in abstract terms. We do not often tell our friends how somebody actually behaved. We tell them they are courageous or kind or sociable or mean. These abstract words are supposed to tell our friends about somebody's actual behavior. But often they don't. The words are often misunderstood. I tell you, for example, that my friend George is a sociable fellow. What I mean is that George genuinely likes people, that he has many friends and spends a great deal of time with them. He is quietly sociable, never making much noise or to-do in a social situation and he doesn't like noisy parties, but he's a sociable fellow. You, having your own notion of what the word "sociable" means, decide that you will invite George to a party, for you like people at parties who drink hearty, sing loud, and make a lot of noise. When George arrives at your party, you decide I am a very poor judge of people. George is obviously not sociable (in your opinion). He just sits around quietly talking to people.

This sort of thing happens often when you judge people. You assume that when you say any person is competent, loyal, trustworthy, and kind, your friends will know exactly what you are talking about. They may think they do, but as in the case of George, they may have some surprises coming.

To avoid such trouble tell people what the person we are judging actually does. We need to talk about behavior if we want to be understood. Instead of using the word "trustworthy," we could tell about the behavior that led us to believe that a person is well described as trustworthy. What would a person have to do—actually do—to be accurately described as trustworthy?

In the day-to-day activities the chief petty officer will, of necessity, judge the crew and select from among them for various purposes. Because both people and special jobs differ radically, it behooves the CPO to learn as much as possible about making judgments.

The first step in selecting a person for a job

examine the job for its special requirements and then examine the person to see if that individual can fill those requirements.

The following rules will assist you in making accurate judgments of people.

- Don't be a quack.
- Look at behavior.
- Study a big sample of behavior.
- Be suspicious of your prejudices.
- Judge one trait at a time.
- Watch the relativity of your judgment.
- Watch out for abstract words.

RECOGNIZING THE INDIVIDUAL

While the Navy is composed of groups—and these groups—crews, squadrons, fleets—must be led as groups, you as a naval leader spend much of your time dealing not with groups but with individual persons.

You must often deal with the personal problems of individuals. You will likely contend with petty quarrels among individuals, homesickness in individuals, domestic troubles of individuals, and disciplining of individuals. You must manage yourself as an individual. Your value to the Navy depends in large part on your ability to understand and manage the individual.

To sharpen your perception of the individual, we shall look at the way individuals differ. We will examine individual abilities, individual achievements, and individual capacities.

INDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES

While all of the basic needs we discussed in chapters 1 and 2 are common to everyone, there

above security; others want security more than anything else. For example, a young seaman just out of high school may be more interested in opportunities for advancement than in security. An older worker with four children and a mortgage on the house may be interested in just the opposite.

There are all sorts of differences in people such as attitudes, abilities, aptitudes, interests, experience, emotions, education, age, knowledge, skill, physical strength, religion—and so on and on ad infinitum. What do these differences mean to you as a leader? Many things, but a few of them are: They have a bearing on assignments, they have a bearing on growth potential; they have a bearing on the worker's stability; and they have a bearing on the way the worker acts and reacts.

Individual differences can affect the way you assign your work. If the work you want done requires heavy lifting, you would look for workers who are physically strong. If the work involves a lot of high pressure you would try to assign people who are emotionally stable. You wouldn't want a shy person in a job as a receptionist or interviewer where new people are constantly being met. You usually take into account a person's formal education where it relates to the type of work you are doing. Here again, we could go on and on, but these examples illustrate the importance of considering individual differences when assigning work to people.

Let's look at another example that will show how even the same worker will react differently to the same statement at two different times. Suppose a supervisor walked up to a worker in the radio repair shop and said, "Say, Louis, I see that you finally got rid of that transmitter." The supervisor was referring to a transmitter that had some very difficult circuits in it. Louis had worked very hard and almost had to rebuild the set. He was proud of the job he had done and took the supervisor's comment as somewhat of a commendation.

Now suppose the same supervisor

worked for hours on the equipment and was unable to locate the trouble. Another worker checked it over and in about 20 minutes had it repaired. Louis was somewhat angry at himself for not having found the trouble. He was sitting at his bench pondering the situation when the supervisor came up with the same remark. Naturally, the worker's reactions would be quite different in these two cases.

Feelings of individuals are more often conditioned by emotion than by fact or logic. You cannot change the emotional nature of your people, but through study of the individual and the situation you can learn how to help your people adjust to a situation.

We mentioned how individual differences should be considered in making assignments and dealing with workers in satisfying their basic needs. The supervisor, then has to work differently with each individual in establishing a good job atmosphere. Thus, while dealing with workers resolves itself into recognizing and satisfying their job wants, it is not a simple task. Workers don't come to you and say, "I want recognition," or "I want security," or "I want to be a part of the group." Rather, they reveal that these basic urges or desires are motivating them by their attitudes, emotions, and actions. They do this in a manner that is peculiar to their own individual makeup. The indications are varied and sometimes violent. When desires become thwarted, reactions result that should signal the supervisor that something is wrong.

It is probable that you have seen a seltzer tablet dropped into a glass of water. Notice that these are two outwardly quiet and apparently harmless substances. One is a glass of water and one is a tablet. When the two come together a reaction occurs. Can you stop it? No. You can heat the water or stir it, but that only speeds up the action. You can take the tablet out, but there is still some action going on and furthermore something has happened to the glass of water. When the reaction stops, the water looks exactly the same as it did before, but is it the same? It isn't. No matter what we try to do, the glass of water will never be exactly the same as it was before.

So it is with people. Each action and reaction that a person has with another

Outwardly, they may even appear to act the same, but inwardly they may have changed. The more violent the reaction, the greater the change. Whether the change is in a positive direction depends on the nature of the reaction.

Of course, the individual is not just a home chemistry set from which we get standard reactions. Every time you drop a seltzer tablet into a glass of water, you know what reaction to expect. Such is not the case with people. Individuals react to each situation in their own unique ways. That reaction is conditioned by the manner in which the situation meets—or defeats—a person's basic needs.

The key to good human relations is to know your people and their individual desires well enough to help them get job satisfaction. To guide workers' actions, it helps for you to know enough about your people to be able to determine the approach you should use to get positive reactions. A good starting point is an objective and orderly study of people and their actions. Let us begin by comparing the individual systematically, objectively, and quantitatively with others.

Distribution of Individual Differences

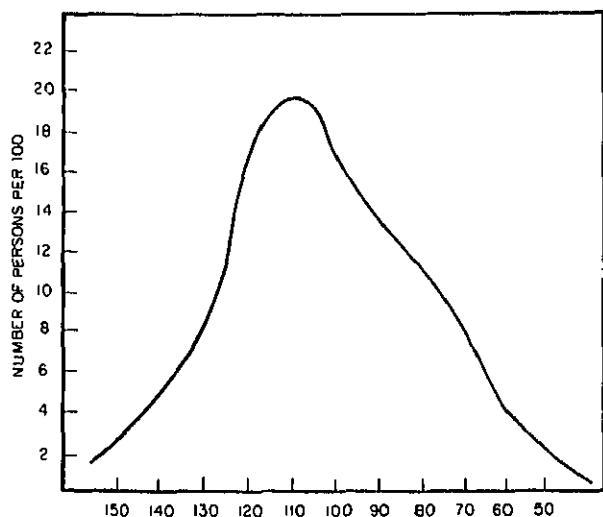
Suppose that you have 100 people in your unit and that you sit down to decide their intelligence. You might go about the job in several ways. You might make one list of all the "stupid" members and another list of all the "bright" members. Or you might make up three lists—(1) dull, (2) duller, and (3) dullest. If you went about it this way, and if you are at all smart, you would soon decide that all those on your "bright" list are not equally bright. Some are certainly brighter than others. And the ones who are at the bottom of the list are much like some of the ones on the "stupid" list. You can't think straight about human beings if you think in terms of bright or stupid, tall or short, good or bad. Most people are neither bright nor stupid. They range from bright to stupid. The majority are somewhere in between. Most people are neither tall nor short. They are

1. Individual differences are distributed over a range.
2. Few individuals fall at either end of the range; most of them fall in the middle.

We can clarify these two points by looking again at the intelligence of your 100 people. If you get test scores on your personnel, you will find that one or two of your people are very intelligent, have very high IQs (intelligence quotients). A couple will perhaps have very low IQs. But most of them have IQs that are close to average. The IQs of your group may range from 79 to 145 with the rest of your crew falling in between. A few will have IQs around 130, a few more will have IQs of 115 or 120. A majority will have IQs between 90 and 110.

Whatever characteristic you are talking about—intelligence, height, weight, strength, endurance, extroversion, or size of shoe, you will find that (1) individuals differ over a range, and (2) that most people are near the average point in that range.

As an example, look at figure 3-7 and see how 160,000 Army recruits are distributed with



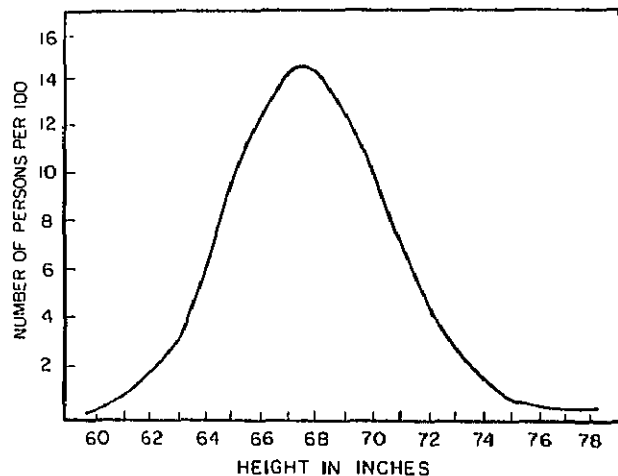
191.14

Figure 3-7.—Bell curve—Army General Classification Test scores.

Most of these people have scores in the middle range. Over 60% have scores between 80 and 120. This 60% is split between the high-scoring people and the low-scoring people. It is clear that neither the high-scoring individuals nor the low-scoring individuals are plentiful. Only rarely do we encounter one gifted enough to learn Latin at age 4 or to do multiplication at age 5. With equal rarity do we find individuals sufficiently stupid to forget to pull in their heads before lowering a window.

The same sort of picture turns up when we measure almost any human attribute. Take the data in figure 3-8 on the heights of the first 1 million men recruited at the beginning of World War I.

Here again, few people fall at the extremes, many fall in the middle. Both dwarfs and giants are so rare that we are willing to pay admission to see them in sideshows. When a man is as short as 5'2" or as tall as 6'5", he is sure to cause comment as he passes down the street and is sure to experience difficulty in using furniture or wearing clothes designed for the average-sized man. If you have a job requiring a person 3-1/2 feet tall (like the job of riveting on the inside of an airplane wing) you'd have to look a long time to find one. If you needed a person 5 feet tall,



191.15

Figure 3-8.—Bell curve—World War I Height, 1 million men.

qually, the person could be found a little more easily. But a person 5'9" tall would be very easy to find. There are a lot of them around. If we need a person 7 feet tall, we again must search a long time to find one.

The bell-shaped distribution curve such as we have in figures 3-7 and 3-8, turns up again and again in dealing with individual differences.

Consistent Individual Differences

Two people run a 100-yard dash. One is timed at 9.8 seconds, the other at 10.4 seconds. Do these people differ? Or do they differ only on this specific occasion? If we are going to decide which of these people to enter in a track meet, such a question takes on considerable importance. We are interested in consistency of performance.

If we observed these two runners often enough we might find that the time of the first one varies between 9.8 and 10.1 seconds, while the time of the second runs from 10.1 to 10.4 seconds. In such a case we might expect the two people to tie occasionally, but as the first is consistently faster than the second, this person will win more races.

Whether we are timing dash persons or measuring the sensitivity of the eye, we almost always find that a given individual varies. Before we can talk about the differences between any two individuals on any attribute or on any performance, we must know something of the range of variation for each of the individuals. Is the first faster than the second some of the time, most of the time, or all of the time? Do they differ consistently? More precisely, how consistently do they differ?

Only when one person demonstrates a relatively consistent performance can we talk meaningfully about that individual's attributes—whether the attribute we wish to talk about is speed in a race, output at a manual task, as a trait of personality, or a score on a test. No two individuals can ever be said to be completely different in any attribute or in any performance if their ranges of variability overlap

speak of differences if the averages are different.

In most measurable but variable performances, the symmetrical bell-shaped of distribution best describes what happens. The expert rifleman is shooting at a target. For example, an average number of bulls-eyes in a period of time might be 22 out of 25. After 100 months of shooting, the daily scores might range from 19 to 25. The rifleman's most frequent score is 22 and rarely gets as low as 19 or as high as 25. The curve for performance then would look like A in figure 3-9. A less proficient performer (average score of 19) might have a curve of performance like B in figure 3-9.

Since these two curves overlap, it is possible that marksman B would beat marksman A on a certain number of days, but there can be no doubt that our A person is a better performer. We have on our side if there's shooting to do.

Differences in Motor and Sensory Functions

No matter how small a bit of behavior difference may become interested in, we can often find that individuals differ with respect to it. For most practical purposes it is

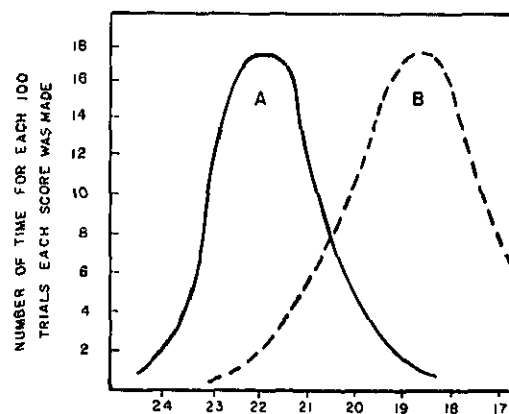


Figure 3-9.—Bell curve—Dual performance measurement

matter much in themselves. But the speed, accuracy, and sensitivity of motor and sensory reactions have a lot to do with more important individual differences in performances on the job.

One aspect of behavior is reaction time. Reaction time is the time it takes a person to make a response. If you seat a number of people and tell them to press a telegraph key when a red light flashes, you will find that some individuals are consistently faster than others. The fastest person may be a tenth of a second faster than the slowest person. Such a difference may seem negligible. But in an age where things move at thousands of miles an hour, and where people must control their movements, a tenth of a second sometimes becomes a tremendous amount of time—the difference between a hit or a miss with a bomb, the difference between a crash or a safe landing, the difference between living or dying. In an ordinary situation the person with a fast reaction time on the highway may be able to stop a car from 15 to 30 feet sooner than the person with a slow reaction time.

Individual Differences in Performance

If you take 50 people at random, train them all well and equally, and then measure their performance on a job such as receiving radio code, you will probably find that your best person is about twice as good as your worst person. Individual differences add up, making for tremendous differences among people. On almost any job, some people come equipped with great aptitude, others have built-in ineptitude. Training may not erase these differences. If we give our good people and our poor people equal training, the differences between them may be increased. The good one often has not only the aptitude to do the job better at any stage of training, but also the aptitude to profit more from training. Training may increase the average output of the group, but training often "takes" better on the people who are already good at that task.

differences that show up in performance of a job, we naturally try to choose those people for our jobs who will give us the most output. This is the basic reasoning behind selection tests.

Definition of Terms: Performance, Ability, Aptitude, Achievement

Performance generally means what people do—their behavior, their output.

Ability is often confused with performance and indeed it sometimes means essentially the same thing. Ability has two shades of meaning. It often applies to consistent performance. A trackman may perform poorly in a specific race but still have considerable ability. Ability may mean performance over a period of time. Ability is also used to refer to what a person can do now if the situation is right. It sometimes refers to potential performance. The trackman may have a sprained ankle that impairs a specific performance, but the trackman's ability is not doubted. We sometimes say "He could do it if he tried." We think a person has potential performance—or ability—that does not show itself in the specific situation we are observing. Of course, we never see ability except by looking at performance.

Both performance and ability refer to the present—to what the person is doing or can do now. Aptitude, on the other hand, refers to future performance and future ability. If we were selecting radiomen from a group of raw recruits, we would not select on the basis either of performance or ability. They cannot perform and they have no ability in radio work. But some have great aptitude for learning these skills and some have little. Some are potentially not good radiomen and training may not make them into good radiomen. Aptitude refers to potential skills, potential abilities. A person's aptitudes indicate what can eventually be produced on a certain job.

Achievement generally refers to past performance. It often means performance evaluated. Generally we compare past performance of one individual with past performance of others. "He was first in his class at Annapolis," or "Out of 50 people in the Navigation class, he got the lowest grade." Often

we use the word achievement in a more evaluative and less precise sense. We say "champion, genius, etc.," to refer to an individual's past performance as compared to other past performances.

Frequently, in conversational situations, we talk about a person's aptitude or performance or ability or achievement without tying these terms down to specific jobs. People do not merely have great aptitude or great ability. They have aptitude or ability for something. Aptitude and ability describe the person's relation to past, present, or future performance in a specific job or activity. When we say, "He is a man of great ability," we are merely expressing vaguely a relation between us and the man. When we say, "He demonstrates above average performance in navigation, in seamanship, and in calculus," we are getting close to a factual statement.

To talk precisely about a person's intelligence we must talk in terms of exact IQs or exact scores. We should designate the test used in measuring the IQ, for as we will soon see, two different tests may give the same individual two different IQs. Table 3-1 gives the descriptive classifications generally used to describe various levels of intelligence.

Intelligence and Achievement

Table 3-1 lists the academic and professional possibilities for the various levels of intelligence. This takes us into the problem of what a high or low IQ means. What if a person has an IQ of 140? What does that mean in terms of what one can do? What if the IQ is only 75? Table 3-1 indicates that an individual, who has a superior intelligence, is mentally equipped for graduate work in a university or for administrative jobs at

Table 3-1.—Classification of General Ability as Measured by the Revised Stanford-Binet Scale, with Approximate Academic and Vocational Possibilities of Each Group

I Q	Percentage of Children ^a	Adult Mental Age in Years and Months	Classification	Academic Possibilities	Vocational Possibilities
140 and up	0.6	21 and up	Very superior	Graduate	Professional, executive
120-139	9.9	18-0 to 20-1	Superior	Technical	Professional, technical
110-119	16.0	16-6 to 17-11	High Average	College	Technical, business
90-109	47.0	13-6 to 16-5	Average	High School	Clerical, skilled
80-89	16.0	12-0 to 13-5	Low Average	9th Grade	Semi-skilled
70-79	7.5	10-6 to 11-11	Inferior	7th Grade	Routine work
60-69	2.4	9-0 to 10-5	Borderline deficiency	5th Grade	Unskilled labor
50-59	0.5	7-6 to 8-11	Deficient	3rd Grade	Simplest labor
Below 50	0.1	Below 7-6	Very deficient	Special Class	Unemployable

¹Pressey, S. L. and Robinson, F. P., *Psychology and the New Education*. New York: Harper & Brothers, 1933 pp. 89.

^aThese percentages will be found to be approximate for white children of school age whose parents are native-born. They are calculated on the assumption of a normal distribution with a standard deviation of 16 points of IQ. The adult "Mental Ages" are the Stanford-Binet mental age scores that these children will have to obtain to have the same IQ's respectively that they

opportunity, an overall personal adjustment, or on sheer luck. There are many people who have failed miserably in life though equipped with high intellect. There are those who have achieved success in challenging walks of life despite relatively low native intelligence. The possibilities mentioned in table 3-1 are to be loosely interpreted. We cannot with certainty say that every person with an IQ of 120 ought to enter a profession or that no person with an IQ of 110 should. But we can say that a person with an IQ of 70 has a great chance of failing college studies and that a person with an IQ of 130 would not be mentally challenged on a job involving nothing more intricate than a pick and shovel.

Some evidence on the IQs of famous people illustrates the practical meaning of intelligence. Terman and Cox made a study of 282 famous people to find out something about the native intelligence of geniuses. From biographies, letters, and other evidence of the childhood accomplishments of these famous people, they estimated their IQs. Here, for example, is a childhood letter from Sir Francis Galton that bears on his performance as a child:¹

My dear Adele:

I am 4 years old and I can read any English book. I can say all the Latin Substantives and Adjectives and active verbs besides 52 lines of Latin poetry. I can cast up any sum in addition and can multiply by 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, (9), 10, (11). I can also say the pence table. I read French a little and I know the clock.

FRANCIS GALTON
February 15, 1827

¹Terman, L.M., and Cox, C., *Genetic Study of Genius* I. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1925.

Galton	200
Goethe	185
Voltaire	170
Tennyson	155
Longfellow	150
Jefferson	145
Franklin	145
Darwin	135
Napolean	135
Washington	125
Lincoln	125
Grant	110
Faraday	105

If you pick 100 CPOs at random in the Navy it is likely that at least one or two of them will have a higher IQ than Jefferson or Franklin.

Primary Abilities

We saw previously that there are many specific behaviors and at least several abilities that general intelligence tests measure. It is now thought that the general ability which the tests indicate can be reduced to a relatively small number of primary abilities—such as number ability, verbal ability, memory ability, visualizing ability, perceptual speed, induction, and deduction. A person who has great ability in one of these primary abilities tends to be good in all. But this is not necessarily the case. A person can have great ability in numbers, for example, without being particularly good with words or in memory. One test of general intelligence may touch heavily upon one of these primary abilities; another test may touch it lightly. The individual taking the two tests may end up, consequently, with two different IQs.

We have seen that intelligence and achievement are different things. But intelligence obviously has a good deal to do with performance on the job. Intelligence tests are used to select people for some jobs because it is known that scores on intelligence tests do relate to performance on jobs. No draftee was accepted into the Army or Navy, for example, unless he demonstrated a certain degree of general intelligence. And no enlisted person in the Army was accepted for officer's training unless that person had a certain score on the General Classification Test—a test of intelligence. Generally speaking, the more complicated the job—the more intelligence is demanded of the individual who does it. We never know, however, just how much either general intelligence or specific ability in one of the primary areas has to do with performance on a given job until we find out. Before we can rightfully use an intelligence test as a selection test, we must know in advance how important intelligence is for that particular job. This is a problem in test validity. The general point is this: We do not know whether intelligence test scores have any bearing on job performance until we find that people who get high scores on the test do better at the job than do the people who get low scores on the test.

Individual Differences in Personality Traits

Each individual, born with certain built-in tendencies, makes some matter of adjustment to the intricate environment the person must contend with. The basic problem in personality is to account for and describe the individual's mode of adjustment, of consistent ways of behaving in daily life.

A trait, strictly defined is a consistency in behavior that sets one individual off from another. When we observe behavior in the individual we almost always see certain recurring behaviors. And one person's recurring behaviors are different from those of another.

takes the initiative in his social environment. He consistently imposes his will and his ideas on his fellows. He takes the lead whenever possible at parties, in games, in discussions. There is a consistency in his behavior, namely—dominance.

Joe's friend Bob, behaves in a way that seems almost diametrically opposite. He rarely takes the initiative, being ready to follow the lead of someone else. He gives in easily to outside pressure. He rarely imposes himself on other people. He does not oppose the social forces about him. We use the word submissiveness to describe his behavior. He is a submissive man.

Traits, then, are words that we use to describe or tie together specific behaviors that happen consistently in the life of the individual. Everybody uses traits in talking about people. But not everybody uses them carefully. The careless use of traits leads to misunderstanding, poor diagnoses of behavior, poor predictions about what people will do or will not do. The careful use of traits can assist in understanding and dealing with people. To use a trait name properly, we must be sure

(a) that it refers to the actual behavior of the individual, and

(b) that the behavior is consistent behavior.

Further, we should remember traits are not either-or classifications. Just as we cannot put all people into either the bright class or the stupid class, we cannot force people into the dominant class on one hand or the submissive class on the other. Most people are neither dominant nor submissive, bright nor dull, tall nor short. Most people fall between the extremes of almost any scale or range.

Recognizing that people differ in their total pattern of traits, a successful leader treats people as individuals. The leader does not treat all recruits as if they were alike, or all officers or all young people. If all recruits were alike or if all old people were alike, the leader could learn one set of rules for all officers, another for all recruits, and life would be simple. Some people tend to do just that, but instead of making life simple, it makes life more confusing.

All members of the same sex are not alike. All members of the same race are not alike. All people the same age are not alike. If we expect them to be alike, we leave ourselves open to mistakes and surprises later.

Age Differences

"Old" people are clearly different from "young" people but the extent of the differences is easy to exaggerate.

Differences that go with age are differences due to the continuing process of growth, followed by the continual process of decay. In no physical or psychological function is the human individual ever at a standstill. The individual is growing and improving or going downhill. In some functions, such as the speed of recovery from fatigue, the individual goes downhill from the day of birth. (Any adult who doubts this can collect fairly dramatic evidence by duplicating precisely all the physical activity of a 1-year-old child. The adult will collapse from fatigue before the child is warmed up.) In ability to learn new tasks, there is a rapid increase up to the age of about 25, a gradual falling off 'till around 50 to 55, then a more rapid falling off. The peak comes at one age for one function, at another age for another. Individuals will differ in the age at which they reach a peak in any function. But the pattern is always there—growth, improvement, and increase until a peak is reached, then gradual decline.

Physically, the individual peaks around the age of 25. The ability to learn new physical tasks declines after this age. In World War II, for example, the Army Air Force found that 18- to 20-year-old cadets were better bets than those over 26: 30% of the younger failed; 40% of the older. When the ability to learn new tasks is not involved, however, the peak may come later. Endurance reaches a peak around age 25. Maximum skill of performance in some physical activities may come at an age considerably later than the 25-year-peak.

wake of abilities. While in many respects a person's raw abilities are at a zenith early in maturity, one's maximum accomplishment may come much later. A study of age of accomplishment showed that playwrights wrote their best between the ages of 30 and 40, novelists do their best work after the age of 45, and generals fight more battles and win a larger proportion of them before the age of 50. Industrial and business leaders reach a peak of accomplishment between 45 and 50. Scientists hit a peak around 50. Historians apparently reach a peak around 50 and 60.¹

There are many factors, including opportunity and experience, that apparently can more than offset the decline in basic abilities and lead to accomplishment.

Generation-Value Gap

Today's young people are a new and different breed. Their views of the world differ greatly from those of their elders. The result is often a breakdown in communications—the so-called generation gap between the two groups. We know that a person's values are influenced by culture and that people direct their behavior to satisfy their needs. Therefore, let us examine some of these changes in our culture that helped generate these new perspectives of life.

de
ex
ex
br
as
hi
ne

gr
ex
dc
va
va
lif

shape his viewpoints.

He grew up in a mobile society and often does not have a lifelong commitment to any single job. He often moves from one locality to another. He changes jobs when new opportunities develop.

Since the young man is accustomed to rapid changes in society, he is less committed to the status quo. The man is open to change and often searches for new approaches to life's problems.

The man has a wealth of information due to high educational standards and the mass communications media. He hears diverse, and often conflicting, viewpoints from many sources—television, films, radio, newspapers, teachers, parents, and friends. From this mass of information the man makes decisions and sets his course. As he must question and weigh the facts, the man is loath to accept readymade or traditional answers.

He grew up in an affluent culture. Food, shelter, and security needs are generally satisfied and therefore do not dominate his behavior. Rather, the man seeks to satisfy his social, status, and achievement needs.

These needs influence his thinking in various ways. The man challenges the importance of material goods for personal happiness and looks for a better way of life that enhances a sense of personal worth and importance. The man wants a degree of personal freedom and desires recognition as a person of worth. He wants to contribute and to develop his abilities. He needs to know the reason for a policy or procedure. Above all, the man wants to be personally involved rather than to be a "cog in the machine."

You can bridge the so-called "generation gap" by dealing with young recruits in terms of the world they know and by recognizing the forces in our society that influence their attitudes and behavior. You will thereby gain a more accurate perception of today's youth.

You more accurately understand your people when you recognize their individual differences. All persons have their own individual personalities and react differently to the forces in their environment.

in the life of one supervisor. His name is Jerry; he isn't much different from you or me. He has ambitions, is conscientious, works hard, and tries to do the best job he can. Jerry is a chief at a naval station. He has a real responsibility. To help him carry out his job he has three first class petty officers who have the immediate responsibility over the work force. There is Woody—quiet, conscientious, and hardworking; Steve, who is likeable, ambitious, and sure of himself; and last of all, there is Pat, dependable but not too confident of his ability.

Now the chief knows his job. He wants to do the right thing. He tries to abide by the rules in dealing with his people. But for some reason or other he has his troubles. In spite of his earnest intent, his efforts to apply the human relations approach sometimes seem to backfire. As the scene opens, we see him at his desk studying the work to be accomplished by his section.

The door opens and Woody enters.

Woody—"Hello, Chief. Can I see you a minute?"

Jerry—"Yeah, sit down, Woody."

Woody (sitting by Jerry's desk)—"Chief, we've got to do something about the parking problem. The fellows are complaining about it."

Jerry turns his back slowly and looks reflective. He takes a pad and pencil and jots down notes as Woody speaks.

Woody—(continuing)—"They really do have a rough time. It's almost a mile if they come around on the walk. On good days it's not too bad. They can come through that open field, but on rainy days it's just a sea of mud. Now I've got an idea. The instrument shop has a lot just a block from here and their shop is almost next door to our parking lot. If we could trade with them—see what I mean, Chief, if we could just trade lots with the instrument shop. We've got to do something about it."

has been writing a grocery list) "comes to" with a start—"Yeah, Woody, that's right we should. Now, do you have any ideas about it?"

Woody—(looking incredulously at Jerry)—"Do I have any ideas? Excuse me, Chief, for bothering you." (Gets up angrily. Turning on his heel, he stalks out, slamming the door.)

Jerry (looking after Woody)—"Now what's the matter with him? What's he so huffy about?" (Looking on his desk for his grocery list.) "Now where is that grocery list?" (Picks it up and puts it in his pocket; he then busies himself with paperwork about his desk, mumbling) "What did he want me to do—roll out the red carpet?"

That's right, Jerry. What did he get sore about? After all, you let him talk, didn't you? All you did while he was talking was to make out your grocery list. What was wrong with that? Well, never mind, it's water over the dam. At any rate you have other things to worry about. How about those special jobs that you've got for Steve and Pat? (The chief picks up work orders and prints and studies them.)

Steve (entering office)—"Did you want to see me, Chief?"

Jerry—"Yes, Steve, I've got a couple of specials here." (Hands work order and prints to Steve.) "I want you to take one and carry it all the way through. Plans and specifications are here. You're on your own from here on out."

Steve—"Gee thanks, Chief. I like to get these special jobs. It's a real challenge to get a job like this and carry it out on my own."

Jerry (smiling)—"OK, Steve boy. Go ahead and take over."

Steve leaves as Pat enters.

Pat—"You want me, Chief?"

Jerry—"That's right, Pat. I just gave Steve a special job, and I've got another one here for

the whole thing up and run it through. You're on your own on the whole deal."

Pat (taking prints and looking at them doubtfully)—"I don't know, Chief. I'm not sure I can get this out in the time you want it."

Jerry (getting angry)—"What do you mean you can't get it out? You've finished number 276, haven't you? And you have Jeff, Al, and Ted free to start this, don't you?"

Pat (still doubtful)—"Yeah, I know, Chief. But getting this set up and going. Well—I'm just not sure."

Jerry (angrily)—"What's wrong with you anyway, Pat? I give Steve a chance like this and he grabs at it. You tell me you don't know. All right, give it here." (Grabs prints from Pat's hand and slams them down) "I'll talk to you later." (Digs angrily at his papers.)

Pat stares at Jerry for a moment, then shrugs his shoulders and leaves, slamming the door.

That's odd, isn't it, Jerry? You give both men the same chance. One grabs at it, the other says he "doesn't know." That's gratitude for you. Oh well, why let it bother you, and anyway you have other things to do. How about the week's production records? Better check them right now. They are due in half an hour.

Jerry (finding production records)—"Let's see now—units per day 15, 18, 21, 17. That doesn't sound right. What is this? These are last week's figures. Why the devil does that girl have to pick a time like this to make that kind of mistake?" (Stomps to door, puts head out, and bellows angrily) "Mildred! Come into my office!"

Mildred enters, twisting her handkerchief in both hands and looking very nervous.

Jerry (gruffly)—"Sit down!" (Pushes production chart in front of Mildred. Mildred starts to sniff and puts handkerchief to eyes.) "Well, what's the matter?"

chair, and runs out.

Jerry--"Oh--what's the use!" (Slams papers down on desk.)

That's right, Jerry--what's the use? With all these prima donnas you have to work with, you might just as well ask for the afternoon off.

Jerry stomps out of office, slamming the door.

Perhaps you have found yourself in situations much the same as those Jerry got into. When it happened, you were no doubt troubled by the conflict and tensions that arose. Certainly, the results of the situation were not favorable. Many times, much of a worker's irritability and tendency to react violently to a situation is caused by personal problems which have nothing to do with the work situation. But, keep in mind that the whole worker comes to work. A person cannot hang emotions at the door the way a person hangs a hat there. If a worker is worried and upset about something at home--if the spouse or children are sick, some financial difficulty, or any number of things that can worry a person--you can be certain that this will affect the work. The point is, when you are sensitive to your workers' feelings and reactions, you will be better able to issue instructions in a manner that will ensure that they are understood and accepted. This, of course, has a direct bearing on work output.

Getting along with your workers is more than just applying the rules. One rule of human relations is that, in most cases, you reprimand in private. You will remember that Jerry called Mildred into his office to reprimand her verbally for her mistake in making out the report. But also you will remember that he shouted angrily out of his office door for her and was very gruff with her after she entered his office. Obviously he didn't achieve any beneficial results. He didn't get the report out any quicker. Besides, it's a cinch that Mildred isn't overcome with the desire to do the maximum for him--so what did he accomplish?

expect something that Jerry didn't. Sure he did. The least he could do was to draw Jerry's attention and interest in his problem. He had the right to be heard and to be respected for his ideas and suggestions.

Let's look at Jerry's approach with Steve. It's easy to see that Jerry didn't recognize that they were two different individuals and that, as a result, they reacted to situations differently. Jerry didn't give the encouraging and the comfort of kindness that his supervisor had faith in him. All Steve had was the chance to go ahead, an opportunity to show what he could do.

If you are to be successful as a supervisor, you must be aware of two basic things that motivate people to act as they do. One has to do with the basic needs of people and the other is with the differences of individual differences.

Jerry has been having his problem with Mildred. If we can give him some suggestions that will help him to understand his people better, he may be able to solve his problem.

- **Observation**--Perhaps if Jerry had observed, he would have noticed that Mildred was hesitant and Mildred was upset. His observations would have given him a chance for further exploration of the problem.

- **Questioning**--By questioning Jerry, we have found out why Pat was hesitant and why Mildred was upset, thus having a better understanding on which to base further suggestions.

- **Getting workers' reactions**--If Jerry had given his workers an opportunity to express their feelings and attitudes, he would have gained a clearer understanding of the difficulties his workers were having. He would also be giving workers a chance to express their own feelings and attitudes and to understand themselves.

Jerry failed to study situations to find out the difficulties his workers were having. His approach was "Who is to blame?" "What are the conditions which caused this?"

the specific difficulties his workers were encountering. He failed to recognize their individual differences.

Supervisors may know theories of leading people, but when it comes to dealing with individuals, more specific knowledge is required. The supervisor must get to know workers and understand their particular difficulties and needs. The supervisor must study the individual worker, learn the worker's personal interests and problems, and know the person's reactions.

Now let's look at another incident. As you read the two approaches to the situation, ask yourself: Did Chief Petty Officer Meanswell

- Observe?
- Question?
- Give the workers a chance to express their own feelings and attitude?

How It Could Have Happened

As Seaman Jensen hurried past the Master-at-Arms office, he was stopped by Chief Petty Officer Meanswell, "Jensen, will you come into the office a minute? I would like to talk to you alone."

Jensen entered the office obviously agitated and fidgety. Chief Meanswell started out in a kindly tone. "Jensen, I noticed your bunk wasn't made up this morning. Now you've been a good seaman up to now and I don't want to have to get harsh. Why don't you go right up and make up your bunk and keep up the good work from here on in?"

Jensen started to say, "But Chief. . . ."

"No buts—Jensen. There's no excuse for letting a thing like that go." With that he gave Jensen a friendly shove out of the office and Jensen hurried on his way.

Later in the day Chief Meanswell remarked to the Division Officer, "I guess I will have to put Jensen on report. I told him in a proper manner to make up his bunk and he still hasn't done it."

"Come into my office a minute," said the Division Officer. "I want to talk to you."

As Seaman Jensen hurried past the Master-at-Arms office, he was stopped by Chief Meanswell, "Jensen, I would like to see you in the office a moment."

Jensen entered the office obviously agitated and fidgety.

"You seem to be upset, Jensen, is anything wrong?"

"Yes, I received word this morning that my father is very ill and I am trying to get away on emergency leave."

"I see. I guess that explains why your bunk was unmade this morning."

"Well, yes. I was called up to the Red Cross before reveille but Jackson said he would make my bunk up. I guess he forgot. I'm sorry it didn't get made."

"That's O.K., Jensen, I don't want to hold you up under the circumstances. You've been a fine seaman and I was worried about the bunk. What can we do to clear the way for you?"

"I guess everything is taken care of, Chief. The Division Officer, himself, took care of all the arrangements. I have to hurry now to catch my flight."

"You'd better get along then. We'll take care of the bunk. I sure hope your father has a quick recovery."

"Thanks, Chief. I really appreciate what all of you have done for me!"

What was the difference between these two situations? Obviously, in the second incident Chief Meanswell made some effort to find out what was going on. This led to an entirely different course of action. In the first case, Chief Meanswell was friendly, gave praise first, talked to Jensen alone, but all of these good human relations techniques were to no avail because they were used without an understanding of the conditions. In the second incident, the chief didn't make this mistake, because he observed, he questioned, and he gave Jensen an opportunity to express his feelings. As a result, he gained a more accurate picture of Jensen's actions.

Visualize yourself as the leader existing in three roles: the person that you actually are, the image that you have of yourself, and the ideal leader that you would like to be. Remember, we use the word "image" here to mean the concept that you have of yourself or that others have of you, not a false or haloed concept that you attempt to convey to others. In addition to the image that you have of yourself, your superior and your subordinates also have an image of you. These images may or may not coincide with the image that you have of yourself. Likewise, your superior and your subordinates have an ideal image of what you should be. Each

Further, the wider the gap between your associates' image of you and the they envision for you, the less desirable will be their reactions to you. See figure 3-10.

Your subordinates, in observing and interpreting your behavior, may have an image of you as poker-faced, deadpan, or behind a protective shell. As a result, they may feel slighted, insecure, or indifferent. You can give visual or audible evidence of the image you want. If you receive and interpret this feedback accurately, you can then modify your behavior.

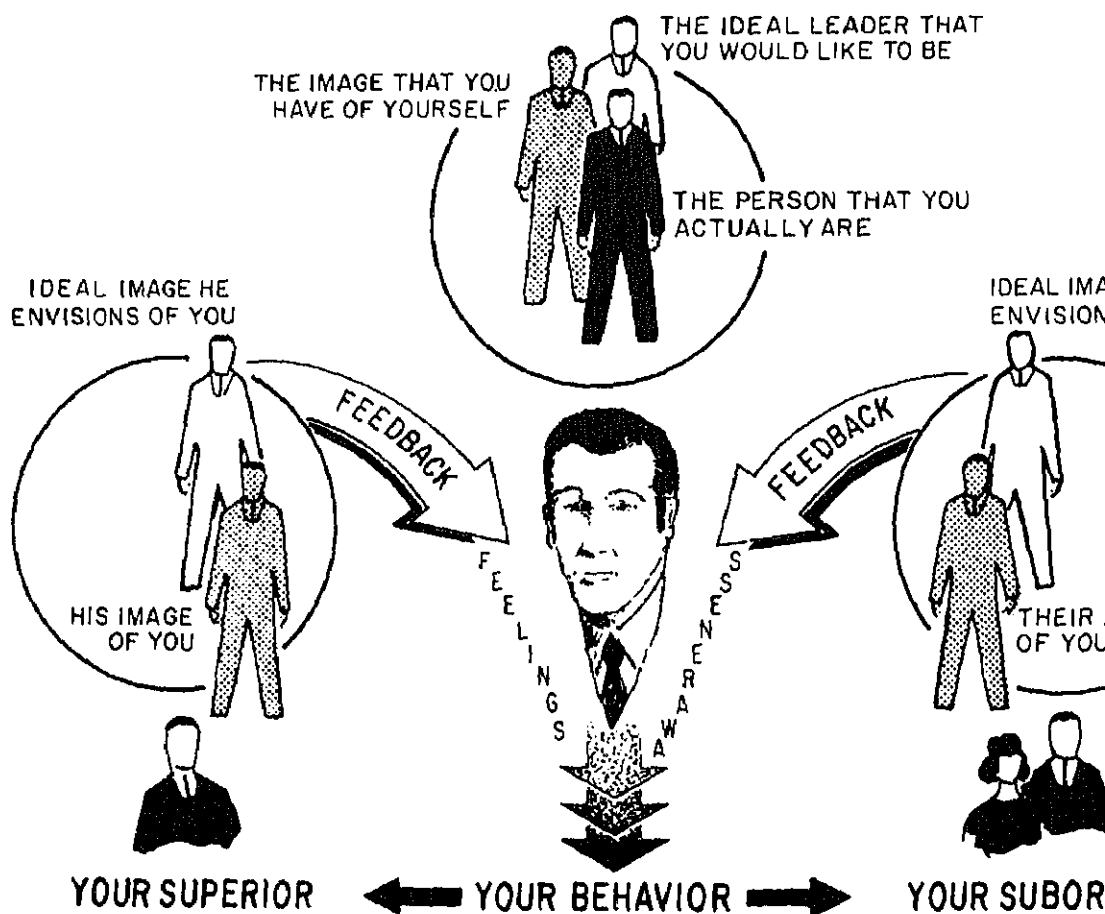


Figure 3-10.—Feedback procedural process.

reactions from others.

If, on the other hand, you try to avoid any discrepancy between your feelings and your behavior, the people whom you are trying to influence will have a better image of you. In effect, their image of you will be that of a person who is sincere, honest, open, and genuinely interested in them as well as the unit mission. This image, shown by the feedback you receive, will become more nearly like their ideal image of you. As these images become more compatible with your image of yourself and the person you actually are, your relationship with others will be more predictable, more productive, and more pleasant.

In essence, your goal in perceiving yourself is twofold. First, you want to identify your existing image of yourself with your ideal image of yourself and superimpose both of these images on the person that you really are. Second, you desire agreement in the image that others have of you, the ideal image they envision for you, and your real self. You can best attain these two goals by being aware of your feelings, by behaving in a way that reflects this awareness, by detecting and using feedback data, and by modifying your behavior to attain mission-oriented goals.

You can more accurately understand yourself when you establish the following goals:

- Gaining some insight into your own behavior
- Learning the impact of your behavior on others
- Testing your assumptions, values, and perceptions
- Recognizing your potentialities and capacities for growth

The first goal is for you to gain some insight into your own behavior. In group behavior, as in your daily work experience, you are in an

your own behavior through both the intellectual and emotional learning that takes place. You are challenged to analyze your behavior in terms of desired effects. Thus you learn to think in terms of these questions: "How did I cause this reaction?" "How did I gain agreement in this area?" Once you analyze your behavior in these terms, you can then adjust your behavior toward more desirable results. If these results are not forthcoming, you should repeat the introspective analysis of your behavior, and so the process continues.

The second goal is for you to learn the impact of your behavior on others. This goal is met by perceiving and accepting the reactions of others to your actions. The key to the true perception of your impact on others lies in removing any barriers to a two-way communication process. Once you become openminded, and thus more receptive to the reactions of others, your task is to interpret such responses accurately. Adjustment mechanisms can obstruct the validity of your interpretation. For example, if you rationalize or project the blame, you are ignoring your true impact on others. In short, to learn how your behavior affects others, you must be receptive to feedback, and you must be objective in interpreting the indicators thus received.

The third goal is for you to test your assumptions, values, and perceptions. For example, your actions toward others may be based on an assumption that by virtue of your position your ideas will be automatically accepted by your group. In any environment in which you realize your impact on others, you will soon discover that this assumption is not necessarily true. If you are in a position of authority, your people will probably react to that authority. However, this by no means implies that your people will wholeheartedly accept and automatically support your idea. As a military leader, you might assume that both productivity and personal relations would improve with a changed policy regarding working conditions. A discussion group might permit you to test this assumption by presenting it; by receiving and interpreting the response

from the group; and then by modifying your assumption as necessary.

The last goal is for you to recognize your potentialities and capacities for growth. Basically this goal is accomplished by attaining the first three goals. If you develop a greater awareness of your own behavior, a more accurate perception of your impact on others, and a fuller realization of the validity and acceptability of your assumptions, values, and perceptions, you can better analyze your present achievements and project new levels of effectiveness for yourself and your people.

SUMMARY

We all develop concepts of our surroundings from a different perspective. The way you perceive something is entirely different from the way another person perceives the same thing. This affects your behavior and the behavior of your subordinates. The more accurately you perceive another person's ideas or behavior, the better understanding you will have of that person.

Classification is helpful to us when we try to make sense out of a confused environment. As classification becomes more precise it begins to look arbitrary, so a line of distinction has to be drawn somewhere. To avoid confusion when dealing with different classifications, you must have a clear understanding of the meaning of the words "same" and "different."

When judging the performance of your people, you will discover a varied range of performance, ability, aptitude, and achievement. You will also find that performance is not necessarily affected by a person's intelligence. For example, a highly intelligent person who has a good aptitude may have a low level of ability and achievement.

To develop an accurate perception of yourself, you should understand your own thoughts and values. Do your superiors and subordinates perceive you in the same way that you see yourself? We can understand ourselves better by gaining a realistic insight into our own behavior. A person cannot survive in this complex society if he or she lives on the premise of "I'm the boss; therefore, I'm right."

CHAPTER 4

PEOPLE UNDER STRESS

Life presents conflicts and frustrations to all of us. The environment in which we live is by no means tailored to the needs of any one person. We constantly find ourselves having to make choices between needs that are seemingly incompatible. We want to go to the base movie, but we also want to stay in and study for the next paygrade.

We want that next chevron and the added prestige but we don't want to work too hard for it. Often, our needs push us in opposite directions. Nearly every decision we make involves a weighing of pros and cons. We want to do something—but . . . As soon as that "but" enters the picture, we experience stress and tension—and the stronger the conflict, the stronger the tension.

We have said that people direct their behavior to reduce their tensions that are caused by their needs. Once they satisfy these needs, the pressures and tensions decrease, at least for awhile. But what happens if our needs cannot be satisfied, if our goals remain unfulfilled?

People always have needs and all their needs can never be simultaneously satisfied. Many of our needs are thwarted. We want things that we cannot, for one reason or another, have. We seek goals we cannot reach. Someone or something always seems to intervene to keep us from where we want to go, from what we want to do. Even in the minor details of day-to-day living, people, objects, and our limitations continually get in our way as barriers.

To cope with these roadblocks to our goals,

satisfies our needs. We may deny one need to satisfy a number of others. Or we may elect a "waiting game" and satisfy our needs one at a time, holding some in check while others are gratified. On the other hand, our needs may be diametrically opposed, and the satisfaction of one means that the other goes permanently ungratified.

With time we learn ways and means of coping with life's problems and conflicts. Our reactions to these demands may be constructive or destructive depending on the behavior that we adopt.

Conflict and frustration are sometimes considered synonymous, when actually frustration is a type of conflict. We shall discuss the types of conflict in this chapter and include an in-depth discussion of frustration as it is a conflict experienced by all of us at one time or another.

THE NATURE OF CONFLICT

The young seaman recruit finds boot camp strange—perhaps distasteful. Recruits likely come from homes where they had a room of their own, and although the room had to be kept clean, the placing of clothes was not as uniform and exacting as it is in boot camp. They had jobs they liked in civilian life and they took considerable pride in the work they did. Now there is a strong urge to return to things that are familiar and more comfortable. For example, they would like a home-cooked meal or to be

responsibility assumed when the oath of enlistment was taken; and in those moments when the thought of going on unauthorized absence occurs, they realize the full cost of the penalties attached to such action. If the situation is reduced to words, they would probably say, "I would give anything to be home tonight, but. . . ."

These young recruits are in a state of conflict that has caused many people much trouble.

Human conflicts vary from highly charged ones, where strong needs are involved, to mild conflicts where choice comes almost immediately. Our pattern of needs is so complicated that rarely can we react wholeheartedly to a situation. Almost everything we do or seek has its advantages and disadvantages. "I'd like that. . . but. . ." is the characteristic feeling about most of the things we experience. That "but" introduces the disadvantages we ponder over as we ask ourselves "Is it worth the price?"

Conflicts are not in themselves inherently good or bad. They are simply a part of life and our human nature. They exist within persons, between persons, and between groups. War is an extreme example of aggression resulting from unresolved conflict between groups.

Our concept of life includes coping with and adjusting to conflicts in our daily lives. These adjustments involve our emotions and may have good or bad results. If the seaman recruit resolves conflict by deciding to go UA you can predict bad results if the recruit is apprehended by military authorities. If the recruit elects to fulfill the obligation to serve the country and not to dwell on the comforts of home, you can foresee results of a more positive nature.

The person's course of action depends on how well emotional conflicts are tolerated. People differ in their capacity for withstanding conflicts. Some seaman recruits at boot camp almost immediately consider going UA. Others have great resistance to the new frustrating

and can apparently marshal their energies successfully in their efforts to confront the frustrating situation.

In the process of growing up most learn that our needs cannot all be satisfied immediately. We learn to deny ourselves so we can enjoy ourselves tomorrow and next year. Most of us learn to delay gratification of our needs.

Some people, however, never learn to tolerate frustration. The "spoiled brat" cannot delay gratification. Nobody really knows much about the origin and development of this aspect of personality, but the belief that frustration tolerance is learned has a certain plausibility. The child whose every wish is granted by lenient parents may go through life expecting other people to do likewise. On the other hand, the child who doesn't get many of the needs satisfied may indulge in useless fantasies such as fantasy, aggression, or regression. We'll talk about later. The point is, the "spoiled brat" and the excessively deprived (and therefore frustrated child) both may be unable to sustain realistic effort in the face of frustration.

TYPES OF CONFLICT

We can roughly classify conflict into three types.

Attractive and Unattractive Courses of Action

The first type is exemplified by the problem of the seaman recruits we talked about. The motives make going UA attractive and remaining at the same time.

We frequently encounter this type of conflict in our daily lives. We want to succeed in the Navy but succeeding means hard and disagreeable work. We want to marry but marriage means additional responsibilities. We want sea duty but sea duty may mean absences from many friends. We like to drink but drinking may get us into trouble.

In many—perhaps most—life situations we have to take the “bad” along with the “good.” Such conflicts may become serious, leading to real indecision, when the “goods” and “bads” are equally strong.

Equally Attractive Courses of Action

A second type of conflict occurs when you have to choose between two equally attractive courses of action. Shall you go to the dance or to the movies? Shall you marry Mary or Jane, both of whom are ready, willing, and attractive? Shall you spend your extra money on a car or a boat, or on a suit or a topcoat? Having to choose between two equally pleasant courses of action is the most desirable sort of conflict to face but it still can interfere at least momentarily with the smooth and effective flow of behavior.

Equally Unattractive Courses of Action

Then there is the less agreeable sort of situation where one must choose between two unattractive courses of behavior. Shall I spend my time on mathematics or navigation tonight? This seaman, whom I like—shall I put him on report or shall I give him a good bawling out? Since my uniform hasn't come from the cleaners, shall I get it and report for duty late in a pressed uniform or shall I report on time in an unpressed uniform?

Frustration

Frustration is a common type of conflict and occurs when need-directed behavior is blocked. In human behavior, we have seen how a need arises, goal-directing behavior patterns are put in motion, satisfaction is achieved, and the need tension disappears—at least temporarily.

process. Events occur that keep persons from going where they want to go and doing what they want to do.

When people want something they can't get, whether that something is as trivial as a lost pencil or as important as being the best in their profession, they are frustrated. And when they are frustrated, the simple directness of their behavior disappears. They characteristically become emotional. And their behavior may get them nowhere at all. To the casual observer, the behavior of a frustrated person often makes no sense whatsoever. But frustrated behavior is very human behavior and you who influence your crew's behavior can benefit from understanding the kinds of frustrating situations people get themselves into and how people act when frustrated.

TYPES OF FRUSTRATION.—The people, objects, and situations that block our way as we struggle to satisfy our needs are almost endless in number and variety. But we can talk about them as general types.

There Are Impersonal Barriers.—The person who needs cigarettes and finds the Navy exchange closed presents a good picture of frustration. This person may try other ways of getting cigarettes and if none of them works, the person is certain to become agitated and irritated. Similarly, the cancellation of a scheduled airline flight, a traffic tieup, busy telephone numbers, machines that won't work, and countless other impersonal objects interfere with the day-to-day attainment of our goals.

People, As People, Frustrate Us.—People, probably more often and more disturbingly than inanimate objects, hem us in and obstruct the attainment of our goals. They, of course, also facilitate our goal-seeking behavior; but when people have their own needs to worry about, it is inevitable that people are going to get in one another's hair. We can expect almost any human association—even friendship or marriage—to be frustrating at least some of the time. Friends and spouses have their own needs and when their

The frustrating of people by other people is seen most clearly in the behavior of children. When two 3-year-olds are playing together, we can predict that sooner or later both will want the same toy at the same time. The frustrated child, not knowing the social art of compromise, often does some direct things about frustration. The older child, for example, accustomed to being the only child in the family, may be acutely frustrated by the arrival of a new baby. The new child is a usurper, an interloper, something to get rid of. The baby is very much a threat to the child's status and sense of belonging. There are known cases where older children have tried the direct action of tossing the baby out the window, or of "doing it in" with a butcher knife. Adults, while almost as often and just as acutely frustrated by people, rarely give vent to their feelings in so direct a manner. But there are fistfights, assaults, and for that matter, murders.

People, As Enforcers Of Rules, Frustrate Us.—When any group of people live together—whether as a culture, a nation, a navy, or a crew, there have to be certain rules about who shall do what. The home, the school, military service, all of society in fact, operate under a set of formal and informal rules and laws, many of which are designed purely and simply to curb or control our behavior in the interest of the common good. These rules and laws are enforced by people—parents, policemen, managers, supervisors, COs, XO's, department heads, and division chiefs—with their sometimes elaborate series of do's and don'ts. Almost inevitably these people thwart some of our needs.

Again, the clearest illustration comes from children. When the child gets to be a year or so old, the parents usually decide the child is ready for a little training on how one should act in our society. From that time until the child learns to act in an acceptable manner, the child is surrounded by numerous "do's and don'ts," many of which are incompatible with natural desires. The parent, the enforcer of the rules and taboos, becomes for a time the child's enemy.

The parent, of course, is not the only voice

often enforce rules and procedures that are wholly to the liking of all members of the crew. It follows that some of your people will be frustrated some of the time. You can develop a way for their cooperation and decrease antagonism if you find ways to make the rules and regulations sensible procedures for achieving long-run satisfaction. To an enlisted person in your crew who is interested only in supporting the unit and the ship, the rules will be temporary bothers, of less importance in comparison with the long-term satisfaction he gets from abiding by them.

Being frustrated by people is generally more disturbing than being blocked by an inanimate object. In the first place, people are harder to figure out than a door that won't open. In the second place, we expect people to be reasonable and understanding; when they aren't, the frustration may be increased. In the third place, if we do what comes naturally under frustrating circumstances and attack the barrier, the barrier might counterattack. It can hurt us physically or professionally, make us feel ashamed of ourselves. We can't open a door without any serious mental or emotional repercussions, but any venting of anger against a human being will likely produce a complicated aftermath.

Our Inabilities Frustrate Us.—Sometimes our desires seem to be our own worst enemies, for our desires are sometimes blocked by factors we carry around with us.

One built-in frustrating factor is inability. Lack of physical or mental capacity to do what we want to do. Think of the healthy person who loses an arm or a leg. That person is bound to experience frustration. The boy who wants to be a college football star who under the circumstances can get his weight up to less than 125 pounds is very likely to suffer from excruciating frustration. Every year thousands of young people enter American universities optimistically heading for law or medicine or engineering, but sadly discovering after months of exposure to academic life, that they do not have the kind of ability needed.

expectations are not related to the person's actual abilities. Through the influence of ambitious parents, or through an unrealistic notion of their own abilities, they hitch their wagon to the wrong star. When the wagon turns out to be too rickety for the journey, defeat, bitter and disturbing, is upon them. When a person's level of aspiration is too far above the level of achievement, frustration results.

Conflicting Desires Lead To Frustration.—We have seen that, in situations involving conflict, a person must often choose one course of action and deny another. Or one may achieve a compromise which partially denies both of one's conflicting needs while partially gratifying each. The partially or wholly denied need cannot be counted on to disappear. It is still with the person, sometimes with great insistence. If a course of action gratifies the first need and makes it impossible to do anything about the second, the second need is frustrated and influences the person's behavior accordingly.

When you make a choice between two attractive things, the denied attraction often loses potency the farther you get away from it. The person who decides to join the Navy, instead of the Army is not often frustrated by not being at an Army post, once involved in life aboard ship. But this is a fairly superficial conflict. Basic needs involved (status, perhaps) can possibly be satisfied equally well by either of the two courses of action. But when we put a person in a situation where basic needs are directly opposed to each other, one need will be frustrated. The person who finds that the sort of status the person needs can be brought about only by occupying the place inherited in the father's business but who, on the other hand, has strong needs to be a musician is in a highly charged conflict. If this person works in the father's business, needs for aesthetic expression are going to be frustrated. If the person adopts the aesthetic way of life, needs for high status may be blocked, at least temporarily.

A positive need versus a negative one also produces frustration. The person who wants to

because of fear of failure or fear of unfairness of competition or fear of personal inabilities is a frustrated individual. Behavior will likely be characterized as a tense, dissatisfied grumpiness.

Often the negative needs in positive-negative conflicts are needs influenced by fear—the fear of what people will say, the fear of being caught and punished, the fear of making a fool of oneself. These blocks can frustrate positive needs, often more effectively and disturbingly than any external barriers.

Closely related to the barriers of social pressure are the conscience-barriers that the average person possesses. When a highly desired course of action conflicts with a person's code or conscience, or with the role one pictures for oneself, frustration is likely. If, in time of temptation, a person's conscience is stronger than desire, there is no real conflict and no severe frustration. Or, if one's conscience is weak, that person may steal or cheat without turning a hair. But when one's conscience and need are both strong, then frustration is experienced. If a person steals, that person may have a guilty conscience and feelings of shame and remorse. If people follow their codes, they may not have the material rewards they can get by sinning. If they become a success by ruthless competition, they may have a large income but at the same time, they may feel guilty. If they refuse to play ruthlessly, they may have a clear conscience and very small income.

REACTIONS TO STRESS SITUATIONS

We know that needs cannot always be satisfied. Sometimes they die out and are abandoned; often they go into hiding, influencing behavior but wearing a mask. Like the body with its elaborate system of physical defenses, the mind too has a complicated defense system, a method of adaptation to the environment.

These methods of adaptation are known as adjustment mechanisms, sometimes called defense mechanisms. We are never conscious of

adjustment mechanism and becomes a consciously applied way to satisfy a need. In effect, the adjustment mechanisms involve camouflaged behavior, but we are not conscious of the camouflage. If they have proved successful for us in the past, they come into play almost automatically when we are faced with new and difficult situations. They are unconscious and largely beyond our control, serving as devices to help us adjust to the situation and to preserve our self-image.

The use of mild adjustment mechanisms of one kind or another is a normal, routine, universal method of behavior. In no sense should their use be considered abnormal behavior. However, defense mechanisms can become undesirable when one or several of them dominate a person's behavior.

Distortion and selectivity are always at work in our daily lives. Five different witnesses to an accident may have different versions of what happened, and each of them is certain that his version is correct. Each of us interprets the things around us in a different way, and we each work out a standard way of reacting to them. This usually involves one or more of the adjustment mechanisms. Most of these mechanisms are so well-known that it is only necessary to sketch them briefly, always remembering they are normal, but hidden, sources of motivation. The following adjustment mechanisms are not a complete list but rather some common ones that you will probably observe in people around you.

First, let's take a hypothetical case to illustrate how several adjustment mechanisms may operate.

One night your color television set goes on the blink. You tell your friend, ETCS Chuck Fuze, who has a complete TV workshop in his home, about your trouble. He says, "Bring the monster over Friday night and I'll fix it." "Great," you say, "I'll be able to watch the game Saturday." Because the set weighs 140 pounds, you ask your buddy, Chief Emil Poindexter, if he will help you take the set over to Fuze's house. You also ask him for his pickup truck.

steps. You both rest a few minutes. Then, you both carry it slowly down the walk and load it on the truck. You then drive the 20 miles over to Chief Fuze's house. You and your friend with much "huffing and puffing" carry the set up to the door.

You ring the doorbell; you wait. No one answers. You ring again; same result. You see a neighbor next door.

You: "Is Chief Fuze home?"

He: "Why, no—he just left—said he wouldn't be back until tomorrow."

End of story. Two questions: (1) What are your feelings? (2) What would you do?

You may get angry. You vent your anger at Chief Fuze, or ETs, or at people, in general. You may say, "That Chief Fuze is a real 'so-and-so,'" or "You just can't depend on him or anyone—people are just no good." Or you might seek Chief Fuze out at work the next day and give him a piece of your mind. These acts are all aggressions directed at the barrier. Other outward aggressions are assigning blame, calling names, spreading scuttlebutt, withholding approval, playing practical jokes, or even physical violence. You might want to punch Chief Fuze in the nose. People have many devices for making their fellowmen suffer when their fellowmen frustrate them.

On the other hand, you may direct your anger against yourself. You may think and say derogatory things about yourself and devise ways to make yourself suffer for your shortcomings. You may say, "It's all my fault. I should never have counted on him." This is inwardly directed aggression of which suicide is the most extreme example.

Unfortunately, people often react to highly frustrating situations with intense emotional feelings of aggression, often with negative results. For example, if you bawl out Chief Fuze, he might react similarly and bawl you out.

ever, by him. Frustration, and its child, aggression, are major causes of problems and unhappiness on the job, just as they are elsewhere in daily life.

But you might be that rare person who, instead of reacting aggressively, views the situation from a problem-solving angle, neither blaming Chief Fuze nor yourself. Instead of attacking, you search for reasons that help you understand and accept the situation without getting emotionally upset about it. You ask yourself, "Which of us got the dates mixed up?" or you think, "Something important must have come up to prevent him from being here." You seek positive alternatives—taking your TV to another repair shop, leaving it with the neighbor, or taking it home and checking later with Chief Fuze, in a nonaggressive manner, of course. You treat the incident the way most of us would treat running out of stationery while writing a letter—annoying, but not worth losing our equilibrium.

What makes you treat the situation as a minor annoyance and not as a major obstacle? First, you are probably more confident and secure than the person who reacts aggressively. Your emotional equilibrium is not so easily threatened as your status and esteem needs are generally satisfied. Secondly, your adjustment to the situation is positive. You think the best before you think the worst. As your expectations are optimistic, you can accept the setback with good grace and handle the problem in a more rational and successful manner.

AGGRESSION

We see that aggression may take several forms. If the frustration is produced by a person, the attack may be directed at that person. Aggression may also be turned inward because of lack of self-confidence.

Aggression may be of the nondirected type you often see in children's (and sometimes in adults') temper tantrums—a wild and angry slashing away at any object within reach. Take Chief Robert Moore, who comes home after a

fellow demonstrated a definite coolness to him, and all his efforts to do his job met with failure. He may walk in the house, kick the cat, slam his coat on the floor, and belittle his wife's ability as a cook. He vents his pent-up aggression upon things and people who have nothing to do with his frustration. This sort of displaced aggression is frequent and ineffective. It often has serious social consequences.

The aggression may be misdirected because (a) the person may not be able to diagnose and understand what is causing the frustration; (b) the person may know what is frustrating but also knows that it is unwise to attack the frustrating object or person.

There are many frustrating situations in which we cannot understand what it is that's causing our distress. In time of economic depression, for example, though frustration is widespread, we are unable to comprehend the complicated and interlocking economic factors that cause our trouble. Even if we did understand, there would be no way of attacking an economic cycle or overexpansion or excessive inventories. The frustration is real nevertheless, and our tendency to aggression is present and strong.

So we often find something or someone to blame. The President is a handy person to blame; Congress, too. During war, when frustrations are plentiful and hard to diagnose, the aggressions of people are turned on all sorts of relatively blameless things and people. The President and Congress are always there as lightning rods to catch our aggressions, and there's the Supreme Court, the Navy, the Army, etc. If we can't put our finger on the causes of our troubles, we sometimes pick on something or somebody else.

Sometimes we know what or who is the frustrating agent, but it isn't safe to attack that agent. The person who is berated by his CO and made to feel like a failure may get quite emotional, but will rarely fight back. This person is more likely to take it out on some seaman in the division. The child who is unduly

frustrated by parents rarely, after a certain age, has the poor judgment to attack the father. The child may attack other kids—preferably ones that are smaller, and hence safer. Bullies, both of the child and the adult variety, are very often frustrated people who take out their aggressions on those who are in a poor position to fight back. You have probably seen some people in the Navy who berate their crew, work them unmercifully, not because they have done anything to deserve it, but because they themselves can't get along with their spouses or their COs.

Scapegoating

Scapegoating is displaced aggression. When frustration is extreme and its source either unknown, unavailable, or unsafe to attack, there is a tendency to pick a "goat" as an outlet for our aggressions. The best goat is (1) convenient, (2) safe, and (3) in such a social position that we can convince ourselves that aggression is deserved.

If the members of a Navy crew are frustrated they may pick a certain member of the crew or occasionally a junior officer as the object of their aggression. The officer or enlisted person who becomes a scapegoat is usually one who (a) cannot fight back successfully, (b) is "different" from the rest of the crew and, (c) appears, at least superficially, to deserve ill treatment. Any Navy crew is trained to withstand necessary frustrations. But when the crew is denied too many satisfactions—if liberty is too long restricted, if pride in the unit is impossible, if conditions of work lead to uncertainty, insecurity, and if rewards and punishments are inconsistent—aggressive outbursts can be expected. And conversely, when the crew or any of its members become embroiled in group or private aggression, you can profitably start an immediate search for frustration. The aggressions of a frustrated crew may take the form of surliness in the presence of officers, the choosing of a scapegoat, outbursts of fighting on board or ashore, many arguments, general

Aggressiveness is a widespread form of human behavior. Evidence indicates fairly clearly that aggressive behavior happens only as a result of frustration. While frustration may produce other than aggressive behaviors, aggressive behavior—whether in the group or in the person can always be traced to frustration. This generalization is one of the most helpful that you can learn. It will guide you on numerous occasions in the diagnosis and control of human behavior—your own included.

Apathy

A person, hemmed in by barriers and confronted with continual failure, may sink into a state of hopelessness and apathy. The person gives in, quits trying, convinces himself he doesn't care. This apathetic resignation can often be observed in prisoners of war, the chronic unemployed, the hopelessly crippled, and is not unknown among Navy people. It is an attitude of complete surrender. People, unable to work out any way of getting along in a bitter and hostile world, draw into themselves, become passive, give up. Withdrawal from others or from uncooperative, competitive situations is one way to avoid being hurt. The opposite of aggression, this insulation from the problems of life is a frequent reaction to frustration and ordinarily indicates deep hostility and resentment. Instead of turning outward, the person freezes into social inactivity.

ESCAPE

The person who fails to satisfy personal needs may seek escape, either physically or mentally. Some people, when caught in a frustrating situation, get physically away from their predicament; they go to California, or quit their jobs, or catch a plane for Reno, or go UA. Other people prefer to escape in rich and satisfying daydreams. Small doses of fantasy and daydreaming are probably essential to all of us. We are all counterparts of Walter Mitty, the daydreamer. Fantasy lets us become in our

Navy admiral. This is a simple way of solving all our problems. The question is where to cut it off. Daydreaming is so easy and satisfying it can easily be overdone. The dream world can become confused with the world of reality; our picture of what we wish we were gets confused with our knowledge of what we are. Fantasies become delusions when we believe our daydreams and deny the real world.

RATIONALIZATION

Rationalization is the technique of justifying behavior that is unacceptable to ourselves and others. An excuse or an alibi appears better than facing reality. For example, we know we should study for the shipboard drill tomorrow, but we take the night off instead. When we flunk the drill, we feel the drill was unfair or the division officer was against us.

Putting our conduct in the best possible light is probably essential to our happiness; therefore, a moderate amount of rationalizing is an acceptable protective device. It becomes unhealthy and disruptive when we have an alibi for everything.

COMPENSATION

The frustrated person, denied one goal, may cast about for something almost as good. People who want to be naval aviators but who wash out of flight training may enter aerial navigation and at least partially satisfy their needs. People who want to play football may, after a season of sitting on the bench, turn their energy to track or basketball where they might find more success.

When frustration is due to a physical or mental disability, the original energy sometimes increases. Great accomplishments are sometimes achieved when this energy is directed toward a substitute goal. Theodore Roosevelt is one of the best known examples of this reaction to frustration. Since he was a puny child, he conditioned himself unmercifully until he became the roughriding picture of strength and

in long practices with pebbles under his tongue until he achieved great oratorical skill. Other possible examples include the small man who becomes the world's champion mountain climber, or the boy who is inferior to his brothers in academic work and so becomes the high school star halfback, or the homely CPO who is the best humored person aboard ship. Then there is the plain Jane who becomes an excellent conversationalist or the pimply-faced child who develops great skill in ballroom dancing. Many of the greatest achievements are credited to people compensating for an observed or imagined defect.

On the other hand, compensation can become a further source of maladjustment and unhappiness if we fail in the substitute endeavor also. The boy who is no scholar may discover that he's a poor athlete; the plain Jane may find she's no scintillating conversationalist. People already unhappy may find themselves in a substitute situation that brings them neither success nor happiness.

Compensation does not always result in desirable substitute actions. For example, people failing to gain status by doing good work, may turn to horseplay, shirking duty, or worse, to show their buddies that they are smart enough to get away with it. The typical gangster is a badly frustrated person who couldn't gain recognition any other way.

The most frequent type of unhealthy compensation is seen in the person who conceals feelings of inferiority through aggression or boastfulness. You can bet that the person who continually boasts of past exploits or present status is compensating to camouflage nagging feelings of inferiority and insecurity.

PROJECTION-SOMETIMES

We deny the reality of our own disagreeable needs by attributing them to other people. Admitting our limitations and faults is one of the most difficult things we can do. One solution is to suppress what is unpleasant in ourselves and project it to others. Thus we can

we have a socially unacceptable need, we may accuse others of the sin that tempts us. A reformer may be a person who sees evil in others, for the purpose of projecting a self-contained temptation. Incompetent supervisors, refusing to admit their own limitations, may blame their failure on the incompetence of their subordinates. The person who wants to cheat may criticize everyone else for cheating.

REGRESSION

Other people facing frustration adopt behavior they used years past. A person regresses to a once successful way of behavior to avoid meeting and solving a present situation. One goes backward in the hope that what worked before will work now. For example, a 10-year-old child when frustrated, may take up thumbsucking, and baby talk, reactions the child has long since outgrown. Often in frustrating situations, adults revert to childish behavior. A person who throws a temper tantrum is using behavior that once worked in handling troublesome parents. Sometimes, when adults are unable to face the complexities of life, they regressively adopt childlike dependence on some powerful person who substitutes for an all-wise, all-sufficient father. Some observers maintain that this happened on a national scale in Hitler's Germany. Faced with acute economic and social troubles, the German people regressed to a childish, unquestioning faith in Der Fuhrer, one who knew the answers, one who could solve their problems for them.

This tendency to surrender oneself into strong, fatherly hands is evident in times of emergency or great insecurity. This is why the leader, in emergency situations, not only can act in a more domineering, dictatorial manner but must play the role of strength and paternity to keep the group from disintegrating. In a normal routine situation, a member of a group is not so willing to surrender individuality, initiative, or fate into the hands of a leader.

sometimes pout. They sometimes cease thinking and go in for broad, emotional, childish generalizations. They long to return to the "good old days." There is a certain nostalgic value in looking back and reliving the triumphs and satisfactions of the past, but a person should not habitually retreat to past behavior to satisfy present needs.

Much of the criticism about the military service has centered around its tendency to revere the traditionally successful way of doing things in the face of new and different situations. The appeal to precedent and tradition can sometimes inhibit creative, constructive thinking. We cannot always rely on past performance as a guide to future action.

REPRESSION

Most of us like to think of ourselves as honorable, moral, trustworthy people. We think of ourselves as people of good conscience. When we find that we are strongly tempted to commit some act that is neither honorable nor moral nor trustworthy, the experience is very distasteful. To think of ourselves as potential sinners hurts our self-esteem. Often, we push the whole business out of mind. We pretend the thing never happened, that the disagreeable temptation never took place. We drive it completely from our conscious minds.

We more often remember things of which we are proud than we do things of which we are ashamed. The former event we keep fresh by telling people about it. The shameful incident we let slide into oblivion by not even telling ourselves about it. Eventually it may be lost entirely to memory. When the shame and guilt are multiplied, the tendency to forget, to repress, is magnified.

Each of us is likely to have repressed needs—needs we do not know we have. These needs influence our behavior just as surely as do the recognized needs for food or success. But their influence is sometimes strange—so strange and sometimes so unsavory that many people

cannot bring themselves to believe that repressed needs really exist.

Repression may give a superficial and transient satisfaction or relief, but the repressed need is likely to rise again to haunt us. Ordinarily, we should face our fears, frustrations, and conflicts realistically, admitting that they exist, and trying as well as we can to resolve them.

FIXATION

A person may react to frustration by repetitive, fixed patterns of behavior. This is fixation—a compulsive repetition of behavior that apparently doesn't get the person anywhere.

People are given to worrying about big questions—What is life all about? What is God? What is happiness? What is success? These questions become quite personal—What is the sense to my life? Why am I not succeeding? Why am I not happy? How should I look at religion? These questions may lead to some confusion and insecurity. And so can many smaller questions that pop up in our daily lives. Why is there a depression? Why do I not get promoted? Why doesn't my crew follow me? We need answers to these questions and often we aren't careful about getting good ones. We sometimes fixate on answers that make a little sense, give us a little peace. Then we resolutely cling to them despite changed circumstances.

Our too-simple answers can set like plaster and become resistant to all facts and arguments. We don't listen any more. We resist new ways of solving old problems. We know; reason no longer exists.

PARALYSIS

If conflict is severe, the individual may simply freeze. The individual is unable to do anything. The story is told about the jackass

does happen in everyday life—though rarely is it connected with the choice between two equally attractive courses of action. It is likely to occur when something is attractive and repulsive at the same time.

Many cases of so-called laziness are probably explainable as paralytic reactions to conflict. The "lazy" enlisted person, if studied carefully, often turns out to be the person who is in conflict. One wants to achieve, but the road to achievement looks very tough and thorny. Or one may fervently desire success but at the same time feels that chances of failure are so great that this person is afraid to try. Hard work is good in that it usually leads to success. But it is bad in that it might lead to failure. In such a conflict a person is likely to just sit being miserably unhappy and, to the ordinary observer "lazy."

This sort of conflict often has a lot to do with personal efficiency. Most people will work as long as work promises to get them somewhere. They will not work when work promises to bring failure, or only small rewards, or downright punishment.

During the war a survey of morale was run on a group of aviation students. In anonymous interviews the trainees were asked this question: "At one time or another in your life you probably had a job at which you worked with great enthusiasm and efficiency, where you felt you were working at your best. If you rate your best work efficiency at 100%, what would you say your present efficiency is?" The trainees appeared to have no difficulty in understanding the question and the interview situation was staged so that honest answers were likely. They put their present efficiency anywhere from 40% to 100% with average around 65%. This means that the average trainee was performing at what was judged to be 35% below the trainee's peak.

There was no doubt that these people were anxious to get their wings, and most of them appeared genuinely to want combat duty—to

But in accounting for personal inefficiency in seeking a highly desired goal, a likely place to look for reasons is in the promises held out by hard work. Does it promise success and rewards? Or does it promise failure and punishment? In this case, what factors are there driving the trainee away from hard work? Intensive interviewing suggested two related negative factors: (1) the pervasive fear of failure and (2) a fear of unfair evaluation of work.

Failing flight training was a terrible thing to the average cadet. Many flight-failures were practically ready for suicide. And the possibility of failure was kept continually uppermost in the minds of the trainee-pilots. Instead of being a chance to learn, to demonstrate skill, to get on toward the goal, every flight, every hour of ground school, became a fearsome chance to flop, to fail. This pervasive fear of failure was enhanced by the students feeling that success or failure was often an accidental matter. They rightly or wrongly, had the feeling that all a fellow had to do to wash out was to pick a bad instructor, or to come before a grouchy board or to get caught by a tricky gust of wind and ground loop just once.

In such a situation, real efficiency is highly unlikely. Every hour of work involves high-level conflict. The person desperately wants to succeed and desperately fears failure. If, at any moment, the possibility of failure seems equal to or greater than the possibility of success, a person just cannot get wholeheartedly involved in work. Of course, any time the person tries to succeed at something it must be realized that one must "take the bad with the good," one must suffer some, one must run some risk of failure. If the suffering and risk seem greater than the rewards of success, however, no effort will be made. If the disagreeable aspects of work are too strong, if it looks to one as if the reward, instead of fitting the effort and performance, is a matter of luck, one's behavior will be continually jittery, inefficient, and full of conflict.

If the chances of success are reasonably good, it appears that success is not accidental

will be high and work will be efficient. The hardships of work will be taken in stride.

You can put your crew in a similar situation without half trying. It's relatively easy for a CPO to make a crew lazy. All you have to do is to bawl out one who is really trying to do one's best or fail to notice good work when your crew does it. If you are going to get your crew to work, you must fix it so that hard work pays off. And you must arrange things so that doing nothing isn't safer than honest effort.

In many everyday situations, where individuals are caught in a paralytic conflict, the flow of behavior may be only momentarily interrupted. We all have fleeting moments of indecision arising out of small conflict. We generally have little trouble in "reaching a decision." What happens is that one need becomes stronger than the other and behavior—as always—follows the strongest need.

There are those of course who will continue to say that the conflict-bound individual is just lazy. And they say that so-and-so, being lazy, needs nothing so much as a good swift kick in the stern sheets. Such a diagnosis is never adequate and such a treatment, while it may produce activity of some sort, will hardly result in enthusiastic work. Work happens when work promises rewards to the many needs of the worker. Work will not happen if it promises frustration and unpleasantness. Generally speaking, the more reward-promising the work, the more enthusiastic the worker. If the rewards outweigh the handicaps, the handicaps will be taken in stride.

MENTAL SICKNESS

Mild reactions to conflict and frustration are strictly normal phenomena. They occur every day and must be dealt with every day. Extreme behavior is classed as neurotic or psychotic (nervous or mental disorders) if it persists.

The CPO will not be called upon of course, to diagnose or treat an extremely abnormal

merely an extreme form of the normal, the study of everyday behavior should aid in recognizing the serious departures from the everyday.

The CPO's first job with respect to abnormal behavior is to recognize it and help see that it receives treatment by the medical department.

The CPO's second job is to maintain an objective attitude toward mental illness. We have seen that behavior is caused. People do what they must do in a situation. The person who vomits at the thought of actual contact with the enemy or the aviator who has dizzy spells during every flight should not be regarded as a weak or cowardly or willful slacker. To regard them in such moralistic terms is to ignore the basic scientific point of view. People with such symptoms are sick. They behave as they do because they must behave as they do. They need treatment if they are to be restored to usefulness. Only rarely, if ever, will accusations of yellowness be effective treatment. A vigorous "bawling out" may remove a symptom but will not touch the cause of the symptom. If one symptom is cured another can be counted on to show up.

INTENSE MOTIVATION

Behavior may become quite selective and extremely vigorous, but still conform to the regular pattern of motivated behavior. We call this intense motivation. A severely injured athlete may experience little pain in striving to win the game. A Navy member may lift a heavy desk, beyond normal lifting capacity, to rescue a buddy in a fire. A student may study 8 to 10 hours a day because of an intense need to be outstanding. There is nothing wrong with these intense needs, per se. In fact, you must stir up intense needs in many leadership situations.

However, at some critical point of intensity, varying from individual to individual and varying for each need within each person, behavior ceases to conform to the regular pattern. Nature shoots the works and gives people an emotional

energy toward a concentrated goal. Other needs are neglected in the process, and the complex checks and balances of the person's normal behavior are disrupted.

The overenthusiastic athlete becomes a wild man who forgets the plays. The frightened pilot aborts the mission. An outwardly normal person goes berserk and starts shooting. In all cases, needs have become so intense they have to be satisfied regardless of the consequences. When no adjustment mechanism is possible, or when such devices fail, we move to the usually ineffective and abnormal behavior of shooting the works.

Such intense behavior can either prevent or facilitate outward action. Fear may make people freeze or run for their lives; despair may make people lash out wildly or retreat into extreme insulation. Modern research in psychosomatic medicine has shown that the energy aroused by intense needs can be diverted into totally inappropriate channels of the internal physical organisms, thereby causing physical upsets. For example, research indicates the majority of gastrointestinal upsets and headaches among adults are caused by emotional disturbances. Energy aroused by intense needs seeks an outlet either through outward action or inward disturbance.

THE PROCESS OF INTENSE REACTION

Sometimes a series of what appears to be minor little things can snowball and culminate in an explosion. Since few needs are normally fully satisfied, there is always a certain residue of unsatisfied needs, of unexpended energy. Over a period of time, these residues may tag on one to the other and develop a cumulative intensity. The minor dissatisfactions of an occupation, routine, or situation carried on for some time may add on and lead to an intense reaction. The henpecked husband violently turning on his wife, the meek bankteller running off with half the bank's funds after 30 years of faithful service, the respectable businessman going off on

a 2-week drunk—all of them are probably working off the cumulative intensity of a series of minor frustrations. The worm that turns is the classical example of the potentially explosive reaction to a long series of relatively minor frustrations.

Let us not think that distorted, disrupted behavior is always so dramatic or obvious that it lands a person in prison or in an asylum. Unfortunately, it may take subtle corrosive forms that make it difficult for us to recognize such behavior in others, or in ourselves. Of these, the most common and dangerous is aggression or aggressive tendencies that are the byproducts of frustration.

Intense motivation is a cumulative process. A relatively minor incident may precipitate a major reaction which seems totally out of proportion. Frustrations can pile up, mobilizing more and more energy that can be triggered upon the slightest provocation. The alert supervisor who knows the subordinates, and who knows something about human nature, can be aware of cumulative stresses and try to avoid lighting the fuse of human reaction.

Intense motivation can result in good or bad behavior. Skillful training programs can make use of intense motivation constructively. The concentration aroused by an intense need can be useful in many situations.

As a rule, the energy mobilized by an intense need or complex of needs must be dissipated. It must go somewhere; it must be used up; and ordinarily it is reduced by attainment of a goal. When the goal is successfully reached, the bulk of the energy is dissipated and the whole system returns to a general balance.

Other reactions to stress situations are:

- Decreased productive efforts
- Increased resistance to assistance
- Increased hostility to the work situation

These reactions are the products of unresolved conflict and frustration. Frustration is characterized by emotional reactions. Thus, a frustrated person diverts energies from work goals to the adjustment mechanisms we have

MANAGEMENT OF CONFLICT AND FRUSTRATION

A person's major interests, attitudes, and values cannot long be frustrated. Obviously, this involves knowing something about the major interests, attitudes, and values of your people. At the very minimum, there must be an acceptance of the wide range of points of view that are represented in any group of people. The person with strong esthetic values or strong religious values should not be held up to ridicule. Rubbing a person's attitudes, values, and interests the wrong way can cause frustration and lead to disruptive behavior.

You should know the symptoms of intense motivation and especially, the adjustment mechanisms. All of us make use of the adjustment devices. The problem is to determine at what point they begin to dominate and distort behavior, and this varies from individual to individual. In obviously distorted behavior, there is little you can do. Talking to a person who is selectively distorting the environment will accomplish little because the person will hear what he wants to hear, and believe what he wants to believe. All you, as a supervisor, can do is to prevent such situations from arising in yourself, and try to prevent them in your subordinates.

POSITIVE APPROACHES BY THE LEADER

To understand behavior, to control it, we must get beyond its symptoms and deal with the factors of human nature that produce the symptoms. Doctors who treat the fever and ignore the virus, who cure the cough while the lungs disintegrate, will soon find themselves without many patients. And the leader, who treats the symptoms of conflict and frustration while remaining insensitive to their causes, will hardly achieve the utmost as a leader. The leader punishes "laziness" and expects it to disappear, calls aggressive behavior "meanness" and deals with it as if the aggressive person deliberately

aggression and the person's behavior and the symptoms. "Commonsense" diagnosis and treatment of people's behavior are not all they purport to be.

CHANNELING EFFORTS TOWARD PRODUCTIVITY

When people are confronted with a frustrating situation, they inevitably spend a part of their work time thinking about it. This, in turn, reduces their capacity to concentrate on their work and ultimately lowers the quality of their performance. Also, a person's inability to resolve a problem or problems may make the person chronically irritable with the people in the working group and thereby create additional long-term interpersonal problems.

When disrupting influences extend to the work environment, remedial action is required, not so much for humanitarian reasons—although these are important—as for maintaining the performance potential of the unit.

It is wise to regard any complaint or gripe as an indication of trouble and also to look hard and long at the griper to discern if the true picture is actually revealed. Often it is helpful to look for groups of people who are complaining. If the gripe is confined to one person, it may be indicative of a personal but undisclosed problem. On the other hand, if a number of people are griping, the chances are great that a real problem exists in the work environment.

Another clue to disruptive influences is a sudden and unexplained drop in performance. This is a signal to the leader to start finding the reasons behind the sudden decreases in performance. You often must use great tact to discover the underlying problem.

MAINTAINING OPEN COMMUNICATIONS

To analyze the situation, you must keep all lines of communication open. Your crew must feel free to discuss with you their problems and gripes, without fear of punitive action. You are then in a better position to prevent disruptive events rather than to repair the damage caused by a problem that grew to large proportions.

A person's actions may be thwarted by interpersonal barriers; by people, by rules of our society and those who enforce them; or by this person's own conflicting motives, codes and values.

When people are frustrated, the most natural response is to attack whatever it is that is thwarting them. Such a direct response is often found in children; but in adults, the attack is often more indirect and varied. Direct aggression persists as a response to frustration, but often aggression is vented against an object or person that has little or nothing to do with the thwarting. Instead of direct or indirect aggression, the person may regress, adopting behavior patterns that used to be adequate; for example, the person may slip into apathy, may fixate on one response, escape either physically or mentally from the frustrating situation, or repress the frustration. In other words, the person may get the aggression out of consciousness without getting it out of behavior.

SUMMARY

The environment in which we live presents conflicts and frustrations for all of us. Learning to cope with these problems is essential to being an effective leader so that we can properly supervise our subordinates.

Our mind has an elaborate defense system that is activated when a stressful situation prevents the satisfaction of a human need. When the human need is not satisfied over a long period of time, the intensity of the need increases. If the need is not satisfied soon, this intensity could lead to one of the many defense mechanisms.

Mild reaction to conflict and stress is normal. When the reaction is extreme and persistent, the behavior is classified as neurotic or psychotic. The leader should consider the possibility of mental illness if a subordinate displays consistent extreme reaction.

Recognizing the various adjustment mechanisms that result from life's barriers and roadblocks to our needs and desires is important. We must find constructive ways to deal with our own, and our people's frustrations and conflicts. Your positive courses of action can increase your leadership effectiveness and help you maintain a smooth functioning unit relatively free of disruptive influences.

CHAPTER 5

PERSON TO PERSON COMMUNICATION

When old friends talk to each other, they usually communicate easily and naturally. They may use only incomplete sentences or gestures. Sometimes a single word or a raised eyebrow conveys all the meaning necessary. They are able to make themselves understood because they communicate in an atmosphere of mutual trust; they are receptive to each other's thoughts and opinions.

We take for granted our ability to communicate with others, for speaking and conversing are integral parts of our lives. Yet communicating in the work situation is a real challenge to you as a supervisor. When you give a simple order to a subordinate or listen to a suggestion from a subordinate, you face communication barriers that rarely exist between old friends.

Although the obvious tools of communication are words (written and spoken) and pictures (TV, maps, drawings), this chapter deals mainly with the verbal and nonverbal communication process between two people rather than with English rhetoric or grammar.

The purpose of this chapter is to analyze the communication process, its cardinal elements, and the significant relationships between them. We shall look at the intangible barriers to communication. We shall discuss the listening process and how you may increase your listening efficiency. An understanding of the communication process between two people can help you to know your people and to lead a successful team.

WHAT IS EFFECTIVE PERSON TO PERSON COMMUNICATION?

Webster's Dictionary defines communication as an act or instance of transmitting. However,

effective communication is more than transmitting a message. Effective communication occurs when the receiver accurately understands the message.

The effective person to person communication process has three steps:

- The sender transmits a message
- The listener decodes the message
- The sender makes sure the receiver correctly understands the message

THE SENDER TRANSMITS A MESSAGE

To transmit a message, you select symbols or words that convey your intended message to the receiver. At its basic level, communication is achieved through the use of simple oral and visual codes. For example, the letters of our alphabet, when arranged into words, constitute a basic code. Your ideas are communicated only when the words are combined in meaningful wholes, sentences, and speeches. Each part of this code is vital to effective communication. You must select your words carefully to accurately convey messages which your listeners understand.

Facial expressions, hand gestures, and body motions form other communication signals. These nonverbal communication signals often convey more information than the verbal codes. With these nonverbal signals we consciously or unconsciously reveal our emotions, feelings, and attitudes.

the other person thinks is being heard. Language experts maintain that at least six messages are present in the person to person communication process:

- What you MEAN to say
- What you ACTUALLY say
- What the other person HEARS
- What the other person THINKS is heard
- What the other person SAYS
- What you THINK the other person says

You can improve the accuracy of your transmission if you recognize that six different messages are involved.

THE LISTENER DECODES THE MESSAGE

The effective communicator always remembers a basic rule: communication succeeds only in relation to the reaction of the receiver. Communication takes place when the listener reacts with understanding and changes behavior accordingly.

The listener decodes the message from a personal frame of reference, likes and dislikes, and one's particular needs. You can help in the accurate translation of your message if you assess the receiver's background, experience, and education before you aim your message. You then increase your chances of communicating with words and feelings that have meaning to your receiver.

THE SENDER MAKES SURE THE RECEIVER CORRECTLY UNDERSTANDS THE MESSAGE

You can determine if your listener accurately understands your message from the information relayed back to you. This feedback

with what you say. Wandering glances of the person with whom you are talking may express impatience or boredom. An affirmative or negative nod of the head provides meaningful feedback. You learn much about your communications by observing the reactions of your receivers.

Your challenge is to be sufficiently perceptive to detect this feedback. You can then ask yourself:

- Am I accurately sending my intended message?
- If not, how can I adjust my transmission to obtain the desired results?

COMMUNICATIONS INFLUENCE INTERPERSONAL RELATIONSHIPS

The signals, such as words, feelings, or gestures that we send another person help shape, change, or terminate our relationship with that person. And the signals sent back likewise influence our liking or disliking, cooperation or noncompliance, trust or suspicion for the receiver.

We often try to change another person's behavior by the message we send. We attempt to change another's behavior in terms of our own needs, feelings, values, and perceptions. For example, you instruct, train, and counsel your people. You evaluate situations, furnish information about a new piece of equipment, or tell your people about a new regulation. In each of these activities, you seek to meet an objective such as getting the job done or training your people. Your communications are goal-directed to change a subordinate's behavior in ways you deem acceptable.

A receiver's behavior is similarly goal-directed. When the receiver sends a message back to you, there is a communication of personal feelings, needs, values, and frame of reference.

feelings, ideas, and perceptions. For example, A sends a message to B. B's reaction may be verbal or nonverbal—words, a facial expression, or even silence. The roles are now reversed. Both A and B try to satisfy their particular needs in the situation. Figure 5-1 depicts this interpersonal communication process.

The things we learn from our communications influence our interpersonal relationships. For example, subordinates who understand and willingly accept your message are likely to give you their cooperation. You build a bridge of mutual awareness and understanding when you encourage your subordinates to ask questions or make suggestions. Thus, both you and your people gather information about each other that may be mutually beneficial.

WHAT'S IN THE MESSAGE?

"You're a fine mechanic."

It's a compliment, easy for anyone to understand. Unless it is said in a different way—sarcastically, for example. The meaning is now reversed, from compliment to insult.

Some language experts suggest the following proportions of signals in a message: words alone,

expressions, posture, and body gestures, 55%. These verbal and nonverbal signals make up the message.

WORDS

No one means all he says, and yet very few say all they mean, for words are slippery and thought is vicious.

- Henry Adams

Many people believe that words transport meanings from speaker to listener in the same way that a truck carries brick from one location to another. But words never carry precisely the same meaning from the mind of the sender to that of the receiver. The receiver's response is determined by past experiences with the words and the things to which they refer. These experiences give the words their meaning. For example, suppose I tell you about my pet German shepherd. If it happens that you had a German shepherd that was a loyal and beloved pet in your household for many years, your reaction will likely be positive. You will probably agree with me that German shepherds make fine, trustworthy pets. But if you were bitten by a neighbor's German shepherd when you played with it as a child, your reaction may

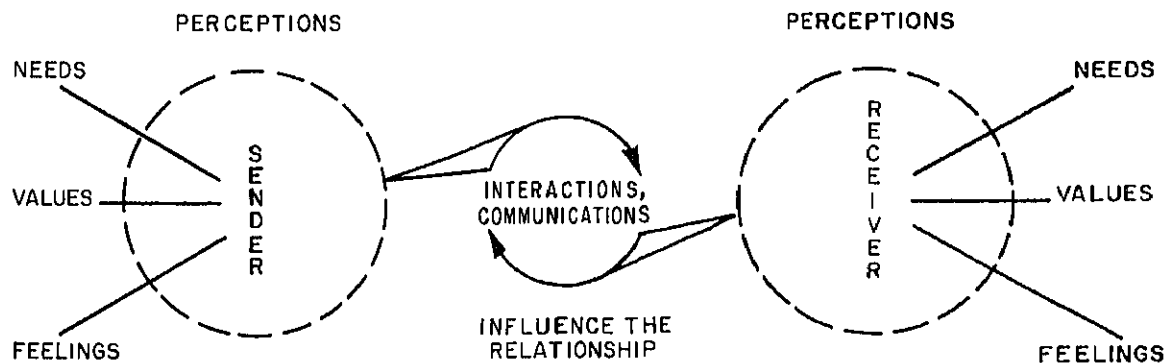


Figure 5-1.—Interpersonal Communication Process.

shepherds have nasty tempers and that they cannot be trusted. You react to my words in terms of your experiences.

Words are simply representations. They represent, or correspond to, anything that exists, that is experienced, or that people talk about. At best, language serves as a map. Just as a useful map accurately represents some specified territory, language should correspond to the objects or concepts that it represents. Like a map that contains errors, a statement that contains inaccuracies implies a relationship that does not exist. For example, while Hitler's armies were mobilizing for invasion in 1938, he said, "I desire no more land in Europe." Nothing in the nature of language prevents words from being used in any way the speaker wishes.

Although it is obvious that words and reality can be different, people sometimes fail to make the distinction. A person may, for example, lose a job merely because someone calls that person a thief. If people act as though being called a thief and being a thief are the same, they are confusing a word with the thing it represents. On the assumption that many people "buy a label" or accept a word for a thing, manufacturers invest much money in choosing names for their products.

Concrete words refer to things that people can experience directly. Abstract words stand for ideas that cannot be directly experienced, for things that do not call forth exact mental images in the minds of the receivers. However, abstract words are necessary and useful. They serve as shorthand symbols that sum up vast areas of experience. The abstraction "Navy management," for example, cannot be directly experienced, but the term causes the receiver to think of certain Navy activities among which that person discovers a relationship. For convenience, the catchall label "Navy management" is applied to these related experiences. If communicators were forced to use only concrete words, they would soon bog down in details.

Although abstractions are convenient and useful, they can lead to misunderstanding. The

in a listener's mind the specific experiences to which the communicator is referring. The receiver has no way of knowing what experiences the communicator intends an abstraction to include. It is common practice in the Navy to use such abstract terms as "proper measures" and "corrective action." These terms alone fail to convey the communicator's intent. When you use abstractions, they should be linked with specific experiences through examples and illustrations. As a general rule, try to use concrete words instead of abstract words. You thereby increase the accuracy of the image in the minds of your listeners.

FEELINGS AND ATTITUDES

Communication is a people process as well as a language process. You doubtless have heard or may have said it yourself, "It isn't so much what he said but the way he said it that made me angry."

As we briefly stated previously, feelings and attitudes are integral parts of the messages we send. Yet we may concentrate on the message's verbal transmission and neglect the nonverbal signals. If we stop and think about the nonverbal contents, we realize that our inner feelings and attitudes give an extra dimension to our communications. The feelings of friendliness, liking, sadness, or anger give life and meaning to words.

The feelings and emotions you send help project your intent. They provide clues to the receiver about your attitudes toward the receiver. Clear, concrete words forcefully expressed may leave no doubt in the receiver's mind about your intent but if your words are ambiguous, the receiver often must rely on the nonverbal signals to grasp your true meaning.

Words and the feelings you project determine the message the listener receives. You may make a simple statement to a subordinate, such as "Take care of this job immediately." How you say these words conveys different messages. For example, if your tone of voice expresses anxiety, the worker may decode the

message, "Get this done right away because the boss is on my neck"; if your voice sounds critical, the subordinate may translate "You've been loafing, so get to work"; if your voice is pleasant, your crewmember may interpret "I know you're busy, but give this job priority." The listener who has the mind's radar working receives both the message's verbal and nonverbal transmissions.

"NOISE" OR THINGS THAT INTERFERE WITH TRANSMISSION

"Noise" in the communication process is a barrier that prevents B from receiving the message from A. This "noise" may be compared to the static on a telephone line that makes it hard for B to receive A's message.

"Noise" takes different forms. It may be noise in the physical environment or it may be B's boredom, or lack of interest in what A is saying. B's fear of A may block the communication channel between them. Words themselves may obstruct communications as words mean different things to different people. Let's listen in on a conversation between a supervisor and a subordinate.

0800 Supervisor: "Get that report out as soon as you can."

(Three hours pass and the supervisor is furious.)

1100 Subordinate: "I thought you could see I was working on another rush job and had to finish that first."

To the supervisor, the words "as soon as you can" meant "immediately." To the subordinate the instructions meant "as soon as possible."

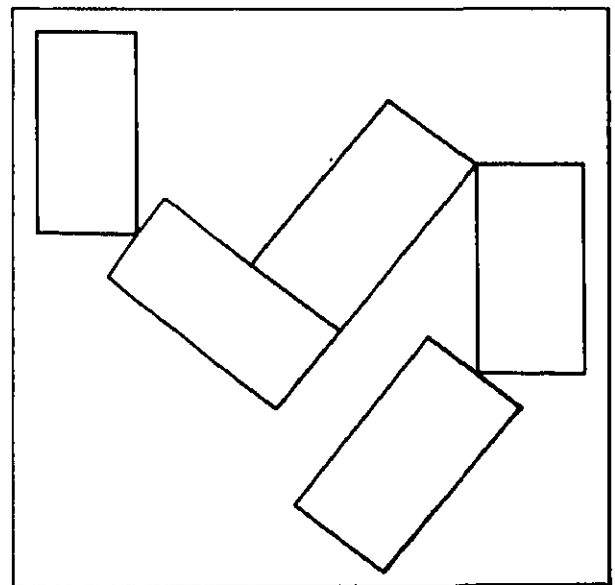
Too much emotion may obscure the message's meaning. If a supervisor corrects a subordinate in an overly critical, emotional manner, the subordinate's attention is riveted more on the emotion expressed than the message's verbal contents. For example, suppose

obviously don't have the ability or intelligence to do any job above an idiot's level. Now, I'll go over it once more..." The subordinate's emotions that are aroused by this criticism may impair the ability to concentrate on the instructions. As Emerson said, "What you are...thunders so that I cannot hear what you say to the contrary."

HOW PEOPLE COMMUNICATE

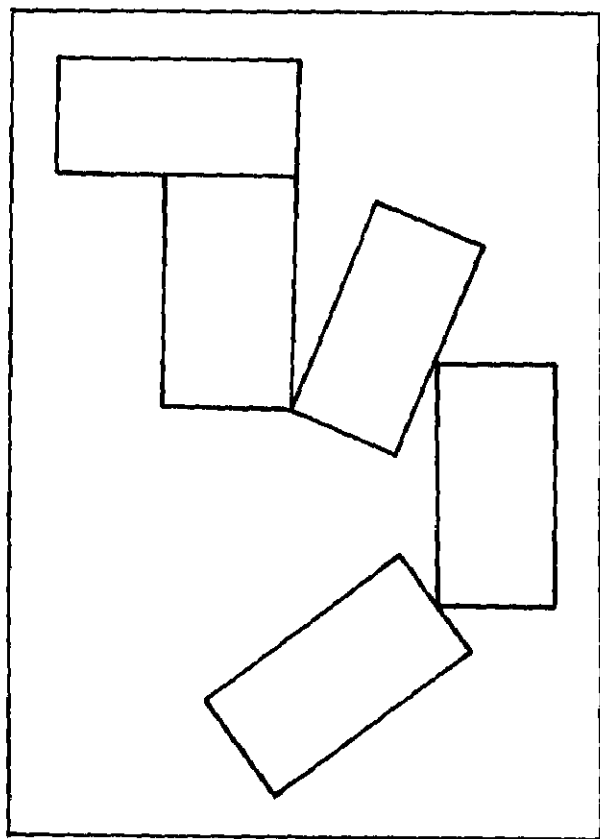
An important aspect of the people to people communication process is its direction—its one-wayness or two-wayness. Essentially the problem is to clarify the differences between the two situations: (1) one person, A, talking to another, B, without return talk from B to A; versus (2) conversation from A to B with return conversation from B to A. To compare the two situations, following is an experiment that you and your friends may wish to try.

Look at figure 5-2 containing the five rectangles. Without showing the drawing to your friends, explain to them that you will attempt to



or scratch paper. In this phase of the experiment you should have no eye contact with your audience and they are not allowed to ask you any questions. You either turn your back on your friends or stand behind something that obstructs their view. Ask your friends to reproduce as accurate a picture of what you described to them as possible. Make a note of the time it takes for you to convey the message. This will usually run about 3 or 4 minutes.

In the second phase of the experiment, look at figure 5-3. This exercise is essentially the same as the first one except for one important difference. This time you face your friends and you tell them they may interrupt and ask any



191.57

Figure 5-3.—Two-way Communication Design Exercise.

times as long as the first phase. After each phase, let your friends check their drawings with the test pictures. Thus you can check the accuracy of your communications.

Several findings usually emerge from the experiment: (1) One-way communication is faster than two-way. (2) Two-way communication is usually more accurate. (3) The sender may find himself feeling psychologically under attack in the two-way system, because the receivers pick up the sender's mistakes and oversights and let the sender know about them. The receivers may even make snide remarks about the sender's intelligence and skill and, if the receivers are trying hard and taking the task seriously, they may actually become angry at the sender, and direct it at them. (4) The two-way method may appear to be noisy and disorderly; aside from being distracted by others' questions and comments, the participants usually feel less frustrated because they may respond to the sender and can check the accuracy of their drawings as they perform the exercise.

USE OF THE ONE-WAY METHOD OF COMMUNICATION

The one-way method of communication may appear preferable if

- speed is paramount
- orderliness is important

If you elect one-way communication, you must spend a great amount of time in planning what you will say because you have no feedback of information to correct any misunderstandings.

By one-way communication, you protect your position of power by avoiding recognition of your mistakes or lack of knowledge. Of course, your subordinates may criticize you privately but in one-way communication, at least you do not have to listen to them.

The person who uses one-way communication may see the responsibility only to send the message and that of the listener to receive it. Thus, one can assign blame to the listener if there is a failure to understand. The sender can say, "I gave you your instructions but you weren't sharp enough to grasp them."

One-way communication may result in sending words in the air--talk, but not communication. In this sense, one-way communication may not be communication at all. Words result in communication only when they reach the understanding processes of the receiver.

The communicator is largely responsible for the success of the communication. One not only has a responsibility to send the message but the continuing responsibility to make sure the message reaches its target. To make sure, the sender needs confirming feedback--feedback that increases chances of accurately hitting the target.

USE OF THE TWO-WAY METHOD OF COMMUNICATION

From the preceding discussion of one-way communication we also learned many features of two-way communication. To briefly summarize, the person who uses two-way communications not only transmits the message but also receives feedback that can be used to modify and correct the transmission.

Unlike the sender of a one-way communication, in the two-way communication, the sender accepts risks in the position of authority. The authority position may be questioned, a lack of knowledge may be discovered, and personal inadequacies may be detected.

Less planning is required for the two-way communicator. It is recognized that the feedback will give opportunities for self-correction and improvement. However, one

The two-way communicator should accept the responsibility for making sure that communication, not talk only, takes place. The sender realizes that the responsibility to achieve mutual understanding is between the sender and receiver. Thus, the emphasis shifts from blaming the subordinate if that person does not understand to a helping relationship in which both persons work together to eliminate foggy areas of understanding.

The advantages of two-way communication over one-way communication are:

- Greater accuracy
- Open communication channels that build mutual understanding
- Recognition of a person's need to know what is expected in performance.

Most people are aware of many differences between one-way and two-way communication. If a person gets a chance to ask for clarifying information, then that person knows with greater certainty what should be done. If the receiver cannot relay back to the sender questions and uncertainties, the receiver is likely to feel frustrated and apprehensive. Added to uncertainty is the expectation of blame and censure if the receiver elects the wrong course of action.

BARRIERS TO TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION

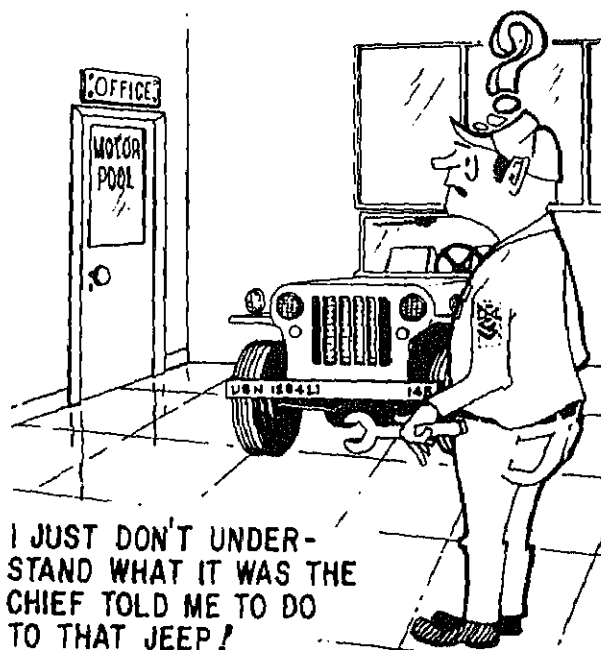
To practice two-way communication, your people must feel free to discuss matters with you. Yet often people are reluctant to discuss problems of difficult situations with their superiors. As they are often afraid of incurring their superiors' displeasure, they may elect to remain silent. Some barriers that inhibit a

FEAR OF DISPLAYING IGNORANCE

If I come in and ask you for clarification of what you told me to do, you might realize I don't know all the things you thought I knew. Instead of thinking of me as a competent mechanic you might now consider me as someone who doesn't have all the facts. You may also doubt my abilities to perform future tasks. My status as a person of ability is jeopardized. Maybe I'd better remain silent and perhaps you'll never discover my lack of knowledge.

FEAR OF DISAPPROVAL

If I admit my ignorance, I might also incur your disapproval. You might become angry. Your displeasure might be directed at me



191.58

Figure 5-4.—Illustration of Failure in One-way Communication.

anything. After all, no one likes to get bad news. No news is good news, they say.

FEAR OF LOSING STATUS

If I tell you my problem and admit my ignorance, you might lose faith in me and give my job to someone else. My fellow workers would not respect me. They'd think I couldn't "cut the mustard." Too risky to bring the matter up. After all, I have to work with these people.

FEAR OF ANOTHER'S TENDENCY TO JUDGE

My superior might think I'm stupid for not coping with this problem, or might think I don't have the ability to handle this problem by myself. My superior could use this against me on my next appraisal. Maybe, I'd better not say anything.

OVERCOMING BARRIERS TO TWO-WAY COMMUNICATION

It's a simple matter for any superior to say to the crew "Come in my office, and let's talk over" but it's another matter for subordinates to express their thoughts and feelings openly and honestly to superiors. Many will clam up and either (1) let the superior do all the talking, or (2) give the superior the answers they think are wanted. Often the superior does not receive straightforward feedback—feedback that is needed to accurately appraise a situation, or to handle a personnel matter.

To gain valid feedback, the superior must work to dispel those fears that impede open communication between two or more people. Being in a position of power, a leader must work doubly hard to break down such fears. The leader must, not only by words but just as important, by actions, win their confidence, and

in turn, gain their support. To accomplish this, an effective leader must

- Build a supportive relationship with the people
- Build an atmosphere of mutual trust and confidence
- Strive to understand the other person's needs and point of view.

BUILD A SUPPORTIVE RELATIONSHIP WITH YOUR PEOPLE

To encourage two-way communication, subordinates need to view the superior as one who helps and supports the group. With the boss's help and support a subordinate's fears of dire consequences diminish and expectations of positive results increase. Thus, the subordinate has increased confidence in the superior. Such a working relationship sets the stage for open, honest communications between them.

A leader can do many things to build a supportive relationship. Often it is not only what the leader does, but the way the leader does it. It is the approach to working with people—the personal qualities the leader projects—that wins the confidence and good will of the group.

A helpful person focuses on another's strengths rather than on weaknesses, on abilities rather than on inabilities. Everybody has problems and everybody is usually short-suited in some quality or ability. The thing to do is not to wail about them but to do something positive to help solve and overcome them. Practice of this sort goes beyond the stark, necessary demands of business. It is a willingness to go more than halfway in friendly overtures.

Criticism should begin with praise and honest appreciation of what a person does well, and then go to point out how this other thing can be done better. This mode of criticising will appeal to the worker because it shows an honest attempt to help him improve. The truth that

Learning to look for the good in people is a satisfying way of life. If we complain often about our people or our poor lot in life, people are likely to think the trouble lies with us.

Courtesy and tact are essential ingredients of a helping relationship. To refuse a request gracefully, to show respect for what others revere, to treat even bores with consideration, to be eager to do a favor, to be calm under provocation and affable under pressure: these are signs of courtesy.

No doubt you can think of many more things that help build a supportive relationship. Simply stated, the art of building a supportive and helpful relationship lies in applying fundamental ideas of kindness and in seeking mutual understanding. A supportive relationship prompts us to allow everyone the right to exist in accordance with his individual character.

BUILD AN ATMOSPHERE OF MUTUAL TRUST AND CONFIDENCE

In an atmosphere of mutual trust and confidence, people need not fear reprisal for saying what's on their minds. One is free to express one's true feelings and thoughts. Therefore, it is known that thoughts will be listened to and appraised fairly.

To build trust and confidence, sincerity is important. It is not necessary that we should agree with people on every detail, nor that either party should admit that the other is infallible in wisdom or justice, but each should be sure of the other's sincerity so they both feel free to work out the problem for the good of both.

Look favorably on the motives of your people. The most unhappy people are those who go through life suspecting everyone with whom they come in contact of trying to do them some ill turn. Friendships do not grow out of suspicion, nor is loyalty in a working situation built upon distrust.

Your everyday activities must leave no doubt in the minds of your people that you are striving for their welfare and the success of the unit. In your smallness you can indicate your

TRY TO UNDERSTAND THE OTHER PERSON'S NEEDS AND POINT OF VIEW

Before we can understand another person's needs and point of view, we must admit two truths:

- We are all different, and often we are not aware in what respect or to what degree
- We are all acting and reacting to a different environment

When we realize these truths, we are inclined to study people and to better understand them. We encourage them to talk about themselves and their interests. A leader thus learns what makes people happy or unhappy in their work or what corrective action should be taken. As a leader looks at the situation from the other's viewpoint, the leader perceives the things that need to be changed, corrected, or ended.

Those who go in for mottoes might add this one: "Every human act can be understood if we know all the pertinent facts." When we see a person whom we know well acting in an unusual manner, we may be shocked or confused. By showing a sympathetic interest, by demonstrating our desire to understand, and by taking all the appropriate steps to find the cause, we may discover what is wrong with the person—or with our own interpretation of that person's actions.

A supportive climate, an atmosphere of mutual trust and confidence, and an understanding of your subordinates' needs all contribute to two-way communication in your work situation. If these conditions prevail, your communications with your people will serve not to dominate but to help, not to strike fear but to enlist their good will.

GIVING FEEDBACK

In any working day, you provide feedback to your people. You tell them how they're doing, you correct their mistakes, you give guidance. Let us examine some basic

FEEDBACK SHOULD HELP THE RECEIVER

The most important criterion that feedback must meet is that it be helpful to the receiver. The sender of the message should ask beforehand, "Do I really feel that what I am about to say is likely to be helpful to the other person?" I need to examine my own motivation and be sure that I am not about to unload a burden of hostility for my own personal benefit regardless of the expected effect on the receiver. Otherwise, I may convince myself that my only obligation is to be open and honest—that the name of the game is candor—and that so long as I completely "level," I have fulfilled the only necessary obligation.

THE RECEIVER MUST UNDERSTAND WHAT I AM SAYING

Feedback should be specific rather than general. My receiver will better understand what I am talking about if I cite specific examples of the receiver's behavior rather than if I speak in generalizations about "what the receiver is like." For example, if I say that I think the receiver talks too much, or doesn't express thoughts very clearly, this is less helpful to the receiver than if I cite a particular situation, tied to time and place, where I thought that specific behavior was exhibited. To be told that one is "dominating" will probably not be as useful as to be told that "yesterday when we were deciding the issue you did not listen to what others said and people felt forced to accept your arguments or face attack from you." At least I will have opened up an area that we can explore further for the receiver to gain a clearer idea of some specific things the receiver might think about doing differently in the future. The key point is, don't generalize about what kind of person the receiver is. Give examples.

When possible, use recent examples of behavior. To understand what was happening in the situation, a person must recall clearly the situation. What happened 2 minutes ago is more vividly recalled than what happened an hour ago, which in turn is more easily remembered than what happened yesterday, last week, or last

THE RECEIVER MUST BE WILLING AND ABLE TO ACCEPT MY MESSAGE

Most people find it difficult to accept negative feedback. Few people can receive criticism with an open, objective frame of mind.

A foundation of mutual trust benefits both the receiver and me. For one to accept critical feedback from me, the person must be somewhat convinced that my motivations aren't entirely self-serving. I can be trusted to be saying what I am saying as I sincerely believe it is to the person's benefit. I am practically powerless to gain a voluntary acceptance if there isn't a deep trust in me.

How I address the person is important. If my voice, facial expression, and choice of words communicate "I value you and I want to help you" the receiver is more likely to accept the message with an open mind than if I rattle off a list of observations about the behavior, perhaps without even looking directly at the person.

A person will more likely accept negative feedback if I am descriptive in what I say. I describe a situation as I saw it and tell the person about the effect it had on me as opposed to judging the goodness or badness, rightness or wrongness, of what was done. I tell the person, for example, "This may not be your problem; it may be mine. However, I want you to know that when you act toward me the way you do sometimes (describe a situation, time, and place) you make it difficult for me to (think straight, keep from getting mad, keep my mind on what we are talking about, keep from going to sleep, or whatever fits the situation)." The person is more likely to accept this message with an open frame of mind than if I tell the person, "I think it is just terrible when you act toward people that way, I think you ought not to be that way, that's a completely senseless way to act, why don't you grow up, . . ."

Before giving a person negative feedback, I ought to ask myself whether now is a good time to do it—whether the person appears mentally and emotionally ready to receive it. If one seems angry, confused, upset, distraught, or defensive, the answer is probably no. I ought not to load

Feedback from one person to another is sometimes accepted as valid when in fact it ought not to be. If I tell you there is a particular thing you do that I find most upsetting, it may be the problem isn't yours at all, but rather that it's mine. If feasible, check with others on the validity of your observation.

When you give feedback, you may think you haven't done a person justice unless you tell everything that bothers you. Giving complete negative feedback is often undesirable. People can rarely understand, accept, and consider doing something about several of their characteristics at once. If you give a person too much to work on, the attention to the range of criticism may work against the person. The more you criticize, the more threatening to that person the experience is likely to be. The person may eventually find it difficult to accept any comment with an open mind.

THE RECEIVER MUST BE ABLE TO DO SOMETHING ABOUT THE MESSAGE

Suppose I feel that Petty Officer Margaret Smith does not express her ideas as forcefully and persuasively as she ought to her people. Before saying anything to her, I should consider what specifically is blocking her delivery. If I think, for example, that she doesn't organize her thoughts very well, this is something she could possibly correct. I probably should talk to her about it, especially if I can give specific instances. Or suppose I feel that Smith expresses her ideas forcefully, but that as soon as any static is received from anyone about them, she withdraws, either from indifference or from lack of confidence in her ideas. I might decide to tell her about this for I could reasonably expect that she could do something about her reaction.

To summarize, feedback should meet the following criteria to be of value to the receiver. It should be:

- Helpful to the receiver

- Given directly and based on a foundation of trust between the giver and

- Given at a time when the receiver appears ready to accept it

- Kept within limits because the receiver should not be told more than can be handled at any one time

To give positive, helpful feedback is an important leadership skill. The feedback that you give your people affects both their attitudes toward you and their relationships with you. Your positive feedback creates cooperative attitudes, improves interpersonal relationships, and establishes a more productive work atmosphere.

WHAT IS LISTENING?

Hearing is not listening. People often hear, without listening. The physical aspect of hearing is only a step in the listening process. Comprehending and remembering are the others. Not until a person comprehends and remembers what is heard, can the person be said to listen. Listening is an active process that engages a person's reasoning and thinking processes. To listen, a person must put energy and effort into the listening process. One must concentrate on the process.

By definition, concentration is "close mental application, exclusive attention." From time to time, stories circulate about some genius who can simultaneously read a book, listen to the spouse talk, hear the President speak by radio, and abstract the important ideas of each. Few people match this performance; in fact, most people must work at focusing attention on even one subject for any length of time.

The behavior of the mind can be compared to the flow of a river. A river meanders, finding and following the course of least resistance from the mountain to the sea. Every navigable river, however, has a safe channel. The captain who wants to take the ship up and down the river and into the ports on the itinerary, keeps the ship in the channel. Like a river, the human mind tends to wander, but the objective listener keeps the attention in a mental channel, the

channel of concentration. Whenever a listener allows the mind to stray, that person lets the current of the spoken ideas in the channel pass by. Attention may get back into the current, but it can rarely catch up with the speaker's ideas. What can a person do to channel attention? The answer lies in forming good listening habits.

FORMING GOOD LISTENING HABITS

Listening effectively is not a gift; it is acquired through practice and hard work. And one who wants to become a better listener can do so by practicing the following rules at every opportunity.

Get Ready to Listen

Listening requires physical and mental preparation. The physical preparation for listening can be compared with that for catching a plane. If a person expects to be a passenger on a plane departing at 2000, the baggage must be checked, a seat must be found, and the safety belt fastened before that time. The same is true of the listening situation. First, the listener must check the baggage, that is, put away newspapers, books, and other extraneous material. The person should, insofar as possible, prepare to listen to the speaker by mentally "tuning out" distractors such as noise or minor physical discomforts. The person should be physically relaxed but mentally alert.

Listen to Understand Rather Than to Refute

Critical listening is a good practice, but it is not achieved by silently criticizing the speaker's thoughts before the speaker has finished. The good listener will analyze but not mentally argue with the speaker. Unless one honestly attempts to get the speaker's message, the listener cannot be well enough informed to evaluate the ideas intelligently. The listener should listen and wait; the listener should try to understand first and evaluate second. Some or all ideas may deserve

should be done after the speaker finishes speaking. (See figure 5-5.)

Take Responsibility for Comprehending

The successful listening-learning situation demands something of the listener as well as the speaker. Examples are used frequently to support points a speaker wishes to stress. The comprehending listeners look for similar examples within their own experiences and apply the points to other circumstances.

Control the Emotions

The listener should not permit emotional blocks to develop with the speaker. How can a listener be unbiased? If, for example, the listener is annoyed by a speaker's manner, how can objectivity to the speaker's ideas be retained? By isolating the source of annoyance—the speaker's vocabulary, dress, or personal mannerisms—and by analyzing the reasons for negative emotional

minimize their effects on him. The intelligent listener does not permit emotional blocks to prevent understanding of a speaker's ideas. Actually, the responsive listener tries to help the speaker—rather than to react unfavorably to the speaker. The listener can assist the speaker merely by displaying an overt interest.

Sometimes, certain words trigger certain emotions. Many terms, such as "Red," "Socialist," "automation," and "collector of internal revenue" are emotionally loaded. Everyone has experienced emotional blocks upon hearing certain words.

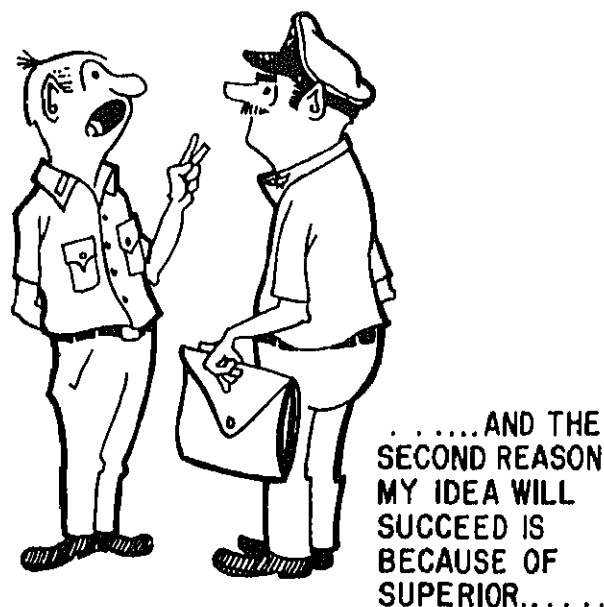
Be Mentally Agile

People do not think and speak at the same rates. The normal person thinks much faster than a normal speaker can possibly talk. This rate differential gives the listener's mind the time and opportunity to stray from the speaker's subject. But the listener who has disciplined the mind can use this spare time to review what the speaker has said and to predict what further will be said. In doing this, one profits from two practices essential to learning: mental activity and repetition. The mentally agile listener has ample time mentally, to repeat, forecast, summarize, and paraphrase the speaker's remarks. This practice increases comprehension and aids retention.

The art of listening warrants the best efforts of those who wish to understand and use ideas verbally expressed by others. The listener cannot listen passively and expect to retain much. Although listening requires effort, it is still one of the best ways to gain knowledge and understanding. Our opportunities to listen are numerous. We shall be better listeners if we give the communicator our careful attention. We can improve our comprehension if we try to understand the point of view being presented.

TRANSACTIONAL ANALYSIS

In the past decade, one way of analyzing psychological types of communication and



understanding human reactions is called transactional analysis. The theory of transactional analysis was developed by Dr. Eric Berne, who wrote *Games People Play*. He observed that the same person often acts as if he were several different people and that these various "selves" reacted to other people in various ways at different times. Berne identified these inner "selves" as three Ego States—the Parent, the Adult, and the Child.

Ego states can be thought of as "tape messages" that are recorded in the subconscious mind. They are played back through the conscious mind in the form of a verbal or nonverbal portion of a transaction. These tape messages can be clearly and distinctly divided into three categories (or ego states). By observing a person's posture and gestures, tone of voice, key words and phrases, and facial expressions, it is often possible to analyze what is happening in the communication process, and to determine which of the three ego states is in control of the conscious mind.

THEORY AND DEFINITIONS

Transactional Analysis is the title given to a method of analyzing a transaction. The single smallest unit of communication between people is considered a transaction. Another good definition of a transaction is a unit of social intercourse.

A transaction consists of a stimulus and a response, either of which could be verbal, nonverbal, or a combination of both. Note that a transaction that is both verbal and nonverbal would become drastically changed when the nonverbal portion is not the same as the verbal. This different nonverbal portion is defined as an ulterior transaction.

By analyzing a specific communication process or "transaction," it is possible to understand why you yourself responded in the way you did. By understanding your own responses, you can begin to learn to change or

goes awry and you can gain a limited understanding of why the other person is reacting or responding as that person does.

The brief summary of the theory of transactional analysis (TA) presented here provides an introduction to the subject. The "theory" is presented as merely another tool which can be used in understanding human behavior, and not as absolute fact.

In some ways, transactional analysis is not a "new" theory but is reflected in the old, and sometimes valuable, advice to "count to ten before saying or doing anything." In "TA terms," this time consciously taken to consider what to say before you say it "allows the Adult ego state to monitor and modify the message being sent from the Parent or Child ego state tapes recorded in the subconscious mind."

The major key to the analysis of a transaction is to be able to categorize the transaction into the specific ego state elements. In order to do this the common terminology to describe these elements is given below:

THE PARENT EGO STATE

The Parent ego state (Note: The people are parents-uncapitalized, and the ego state is Parent-capitalized.) begins to develop at birth and continues for approximately the first years of a person's life. Parent ego state messages are those behavioral patterns that are accepted as absolute truth without question or modification. Understandably, these messages must be from a source that is considered with high regard and trust. The primary source that usually would be one's mother and father or the main parental figure/ (with grandparents, babysitters, other relatives, nursery school teachers, or other persons who have close continued contact with the young child also having an input).

The Parent ego tapes are different for each person, recording exactly what happened to that particular child. In general the Parent tapes

contain all the thousands of “no’s” and “don’ts” and the “do’s” and “shoulds” that the child was told. “Sit up straight.” “Wash your hands before eating.” “Brush your teeth before going to bed.” “Don’t lie!” “Be good.” “Clean your plate.” “Don’t play in the street.” “Don’t talk to strangers.” “Sit still.” “Be quiet.”

They also contain “how-to” information. How to make a bed, eat properly, shake hands, nail a board, say thank you, etc. Much of the information is useful but some is outdated or may never have been valid.

Parent ego state body language includes pointing an accusing finger at someone, patting someone on the back, shaking your head “yes” or “no,” pounding on a table, folding one’s arms across the chest, tapping a foot impatiently, and looking down one’s nose at someone.

Facial expressions include smiling, frowning, looking angry, looking sympathetic, sneering, looking disapproving, and nodding encouragingly.

The tone of voice used in the Parent ego state may be sneering, punitive, condescending, encouraging, supportive, or sympathetic.

There are two parts of the Parent ego tape. They are the Critical Parent and the Nurturing Parent. Prejudice is recorded in the Parent tapes as are opinions on religion, politics, proper dress, child-rearing, and traditions. (As noted earlier, these opinions are regarded as absolute truth, which is why they are difficult to change and why such subjects frequently lead to arguments.)

THE CHILD EGO STATE

The Child ego state is that source of behavior that contains messages from a person’s internal feelings and emotions that result from the external environment. Since the Child ego state begins to develop at (or even before) birth, the messages that are recorded in the subconscious for this ego state are nonverbal. By

and emotions that are possible, so that the Child ego state is then fully developed.

The Child ego state tapes are recorded simultaneously with the Parent tapes. Child tapes record the internal events or responses of the small being to what is seen and heard. Thus feelings are recorded in the Child tapes to accompany the external scenes and events recorded in the Parent. The Child tape records what one feels and understands at the moment that external events occur. Since the infant has no vocabulary, most early records are of feelings, emotions, and sensations.

Every infant is small, helpless, dependent, inept, clumsy. The infant is not always fed when hungry, held when lonely or unhappy, changed when wet, or allowed to do what he wants when he wants. The main byproducts of being “civilized” are frustration and negative feelings. This is true no matter how “good” the parents try to be.

The Child tapes also include creativity, curiosity, the desire to explore, the urges to touch and experience new things, and the delights of experiencing the world—feeling the first kitten, going barefoot, swimming, chasing a butterfly, running, tasting new foods, laughter, all the happy parts of one’s experience.

The feelings in the Child tapes range from anger and despair, to helplessness, to contentment and joy—the entire range of human emotion that has been experienced.

Child ego state body language includes nail biting, squirming, nose thumbing, (and other obscene gestures), slumping, looking dejected, skipping, batting eyelashes, having a temper tantrum, and shrugging the shoulders.

The tone of voice used may include giggling, belly laughing, talking fast and loud, whining, talking sweet talk, crying, screaming, and swearing.

Facial expressions may include teary eyes, looking up, downcast eyes, excited or curious,

won't, want, wish, mine, look at me, help me, it's your fault, you'll be sorry, I didn't do it, mine is better than yours, let's play, just leave me alone, and see what you made me do."

The Child ego state has three parts. They are the Natural Child, the Adapted Child, and the Little Professor.

The Natural Child contains all the impulses that come naturally to the infant. The Natural Child is affectionate, impulsive, and sensuous. It is also fearful, self-indulgent, self-centered, and aggressive.

The Adapted Child is obedient, timid, and fearful. It is the part that learns what to do to avoid punishment, that does what grownups insist upon. The Adapted Child often is the "troubled" part of a person's personality. It is usually in control when a person feels confused and unable to think.

The Little Professor is creative, manipulative, intuitive, and demanding. The intuitive feelings, hunches, and things you sense but don't quite know why—are probably Little Professor. So also are a woman's tears to get her own way—and the old line men use of "My wife doesn't understand me!" (She probably does!)

The Child ego state frequently surfaces when a person is sick, injured, tired, worried, or under stress. Parent comments frequently "hook" the Child ego state, so do appeals from the Child ego state in another person. (Examples: Put on your coat, you'll catch cold! Let's go barefoot! Let's skip class!)

THE ADULT EGO STATE

A person's Adult ego state usually begins to develop from age 10 months and continues throughout one's life. The generally accepted key to the development of the Adult ego state is when a baby acquires mobility and is able to discover new things on its own. The tapes in the Adult ego state contain messages based on the individual's perception of the world and interpretation of the appropriate behavioral patterns based on logical conclusions. (Note that the word "Adult" in this case defines the ego state and not a grown person.)

infant achieves self-actualization, which is the beginning of the Adult ego state.

The Adult ego state can be considered a computer. Data from the Parent and Child ego tapes play back and can be compared against present reality or the data which the Adult ego state has gathered and is gathering.

Thus, the information "Don't play in the street, you might get hit by a car" which is recorded in the Parent and the feelings of rage and pain and frustration which were recorded in the Child when the 3-year-old was spanked for running into the street anyway, can be compared and tested against present reality. "Yes, I might get hit by a car—but there are no cars coming." And the Adult ego state can update reality data.

The data in the Parent and Child ego state are complete by about age 5. They can NOT be changed but they can be tested against reality—for example, space travel was once only possible in fiction, now it is really possible, so this data is updated in the face of present reality in the Adult tape.

The work of the Adult ego state is to check out old data (information and feelings) and see if they are still appropriate, and refile the data. If there is little conflict between what was taught and what is real, the "computer" is the freed for creativity and the learning of new things.

The Adult ego state uses words and phrases like "how, when, who, what, where, why." It is evidenced by providing or requesting information. "Have you tried this?" "This is how it works." "What time is the meeting?" "What are the facts?" "Yes." "No." "Check out."

The tone of voice used in the Adult ego state is clear without undue emotion. It is calm, even, and confident.

Body language includes straight posture, level eye contact, and pointing something out (such as direction) with a finger.

Facial expressions include thoughtful, attentive, quizzical, lively, and confident.

All normal persons have within themselves, all three ego states and respond to situations using them. All are appropriate in some circumstances—it is when an inappropriate ego state is used, that difficulties may occur. By being able to recognize the physical clues (body language, tone of voice, and facial expressions) as well as the words used, you can analyze what is happening or what happened and why.

During a carnival, parade, picnic, Mardi Gras celebration, or party—many people are responding from a Child ego state and it is appropriate. On other occasions it may or may not be appropriate.

In instructing lower-rated personnel how to do something you can tell them to “do it because I said so” (Parent ego state stimulus) or you can explain the reasons why it should be done in that way (an Adult ego state stimulus). In the first way of transacting you might obtain either a Parent response, an Adult response, or a Child response. In the second way of presenting the information you would be more likely to receive an Adult response, which in this situation saves time and is more effective.

Consider how you would probably feel if your division officer called you in and said “Sit down! I want to talk to you!” in an angry voice. Would you feel resentful? Anxious? Nervous?

Suppose however one said, “Pull up a chair and let’s discuss this problem.” in a calm, quiet voice. Do you think you would feel and respond differently? Probably so.

The next time you find yourself puzzled by a communication attempt that goes differently than you expected, try thinking back over what was said and how, but more important than the words used, try to remember the facial expressions, tone of voice, and body language or gestures used. They will possibly give you enough clues to discover what happened. When you find yourself asking—“What’s the matter with the person,” or “Why did I do that?” or “Why do I always get upset talking to this particular person?”—Frequently you can find an answer by examining the transaction.

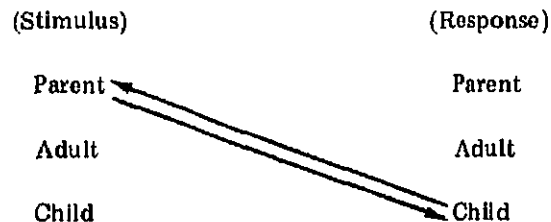
Briefly, again, a transaction is described by defining the ego states that are being used by the

earlier for each of the three respective ego states. From recognizing these clues, you can see how they point to a particular ego state. Also, an ulterior transaction can occur through gestures and posture in conjunction with a verbal transaction from an entirely different ego state. (Actions speak louder than words—and we react to both whether we realize it or not.)

Transactions are either parallel, crossed, or ulterior. Transactions may be

Adult—Adult	Parent—Parent	Child—Adult
Adult—Child	Parent—Child	Child—Child
Adult—Parent	Parent—Adult	Child—Parent

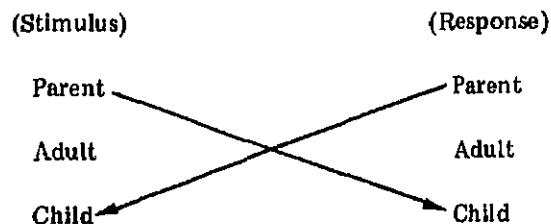
Diagrams are used to illustrate various transactions for better understanding. An example is:



“You have to complete this job today!”	“Gosh, I have a lot of other things to do and I dunno if I can.”
--	--

The Parent-Child, Child-Parent transaction is one of several parallel transactions. These types do not cause conflict and can continue indefinitely. However, communication in this transaction is limited, and unpleasant.

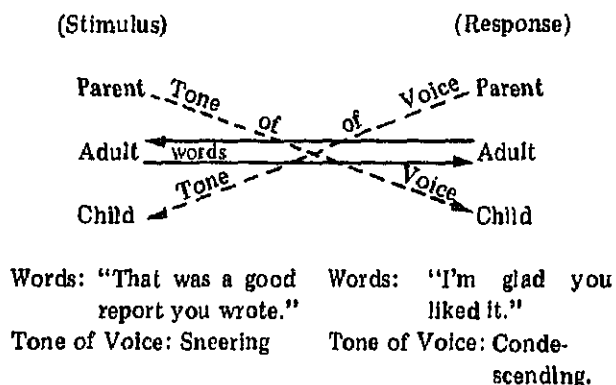
However, note this transaction:



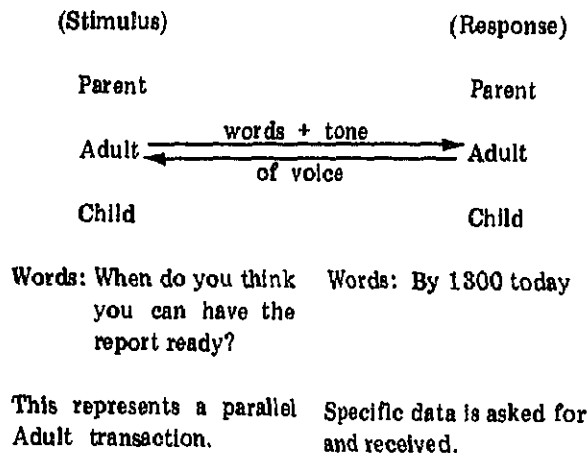
“You have to complete this job today.”	“Don’t be ridiculous, my other work is more important.”
--	---

connect. It frequently leads to the "You win," "Won't," "Will!" "Won't" type of communication and accomplishes little.

Of course, there are several other possible combinations. One of the most common is shown below:



As you can see, the ulterior (dashed line) transaction is crossed and could lead to open conflict if continued. This is the sly dig, loaded compliment, and barbed reply type of communication.



In communicating, listening is an Adult response. Ignoring someone would be a Child or Parent response and implies that what they are saying is not important at all. NOT listening to someone rarely provokes (hooks) an Adult response.

Listening can be learned, and often, a failure to listen is not intended to convey the meaning

to understanding behavior. Its principles can be applied at work, at home, and whenever people deal with people. Any individual can learn to strengthen the Adult ego state and use it more often when it is appropriate. This can be accomplished if one can learn to tell the difference between life as one observed it or was taught (Parent), life as one felt it (Child), and life as it really is or could be (Adult). The Adult ego state can recognize the Parent or Child stimuli in others and choose not to respond in kind. One can not control how others act but one can learn to modify one's own behavior.

Once you have learned the ego states (basics) of transactional analysis, you can better understand the other areas of TA, such as psychological games ("See What You Made Me Do," "Let's You and Him Fight," "Poor Me," and "I'm Only Trying to Help You," are some), life positions (I'm O.K., I'm Not O.K., You're O.K., You're Not O.K.), life scripts ("I'm a bum," "I can do anything I like," "Men are bums," or "People are nice"), and the use of time.

According to Berne, there are six ways in which time is used—or six types of experience—one of which is involved in any transaction. They are withdrawal, rituals, activities, pastimes, games, and intimacy.

Withdrawal is not a transaction with another person but can occur in a social situation (such as daydreaming). A ritual is a socially programmed safe use of time (church, birthday or cocktail parties, greeting people, making introductions). An activity is a method of structuring time alone (washing dishes or the car, shoveling snow, studying) and does not need involvement with another person.

Pastimes are a way of passing time (perhaps until one gets to know someone better) and include class reunions, luncheons, teas, and social clubs at which variations of "Small Talk" are played—talking about cars, prices, the weather, places you've been, or people you used to know, recipes, sports and games, clothes, or operations.

A game is an ongoing series of complementary ulterior transactions with a payoff. All games originate from the childhood game of "Mine is Better Than Yours," which is an offensive defense. In addition to the games mentioned earlier—other variations are "Ain't it Awful," "Now I've Got You, You S.O.B.," "Wooden Leg," and "If It Weren't for You, I Could." Games are time-structuring devices to keep people some distance apart (as are withdrawal, rituals, activities, and pastimes).

Intimacy is a relationship in which there is spontaneous giving and sharing. Both parties are in an Adult ego state but can allow the Natural Child to emerge in the relationship. Intimacy has no ulterior purpose and no "planned payoff."

Of the possible ways to structure time it may be said that withdrawal is useful, pastimes are socially useful, rituals can be fun, activities are necessary, games are usually destructive, and intimacy is rare.

SUMMARY

Effective communication involves the understanding of a message, not just the transmission

of that message. It also involves the proper use of signals in the message, such as tone of voice and inflection, facial expressions, posture, and body gestures. The two directional aspects of communication are one-way and two-way communication. One-way communication is faster than two-way but is inaccurate because no chance for feedback is allowed. The most important criterion the feedback must meet is to be helpful to the receiver. The receiver must understand what the sender says.

Hearing is not listening. It is only a step in the listening process. Not until a person understands and remembers what is heard can we say that the person is listening.

The smallest unit of communication is called a transaction. A transaction consists of a stimulus and a response. The stimulus and response can be either verbal or nonverbal. A transaction can be categorized into specific ego states. These ego states are the parent, the child, and the adult. You should determine if you are communicating with the parent, the adult, or the child before providing an answer or offering information.

CHAPTER 6

THE PERSON AND THE JOB

Traditionally, a manager's job has been viewed as the planning, organizing, directing, and controlling of operations so that the organization can accomplish its mission.

Many modern management authorities consider this concept inadequate because it fails to recognize the major role that people play in achieving organization objectives. To get the job done, managers direct the activities of people, organize activities for people, and attempt to control the activities of people. Therefore, many management authorities prefer a concept of a manager that takes into account the responsibilities to integrate the interests and needs of the workers with those of the organization.

BASIC RESOURCES OF A MANAGER

The basic resources of a manager are (1) people, (2) money, (3) materials, (4) space, (5) time, and (6) functions or jobs. The effective manager integrates all six resources into a unit that successfully accomplishes its objectives. Assuming that sufficient resources are available, managing people is the central and most important managerial task. People's efforts determine to a large degree how efficiently organizational goals will be achieved. Even the best equipment or the best possible arrangement of jobs will be of little value if the enthusiasm and cooperation of people are not attained.

BENEFITS OF OBJECTIVES

Clear, specific, and relevant objectives that are understood and accepted by workers are

necessary to the efficient functioning of a unit. First, objectives indicate the proper course of action a worker should take. Each person knows what to do in order to accomplish the objectives. Therefore, unnecessary or irrelevant activities can be eliminated.

Second, objectives provide the basis for cooperation and coordination in the work unit. When each worker's objectives help meet the overall work goal, greater coordination and cooperation should result.

Third, objectives establish standards for measuring accomplishments and progress. Specific goals such as quality standards, production deadlines, etc., let a person know what accomplishments are expected and what progress is being made at all times. The person also knows that there will be objective evaluations on accomplishments in relation to organizational goals.

MATCHING THE INDIVIDUAL'S GOALS WITH ORGANIZATIONAL GOALS

On the surface, it seems that many of a manager's problems are solved if the manager establishes and communicates clear, specific, and relevant objectives to the workers. However, behavioral scientists in the field of management have identified a major obstacle to achieving organizational goals. Their research shows that the goals and needs of people in organizations frequently differ from the goals and needs of the organization.

People bring to an organization their innate needs for survival, security, social esteem, and growth that we described in chapter 1. What a person wants from an organization are sufficient

workers and superiors; recognition of accomplishments; the esteem of the organization through assistance from superiors; worthwhile and beneficial work; and opportunities for professional growth and development on the job.

The organization has specific objectives to accomplish that require the productive efforts of an employee. The organization needs the employee to contribute the physical energies and intellectual efforts to accomplish its goals. In effect, the organization is trying to satisfy its needs through the person while the person is trying to satisfy personal needs through association with the organization. The organization asks for a worker's abilities, energy, and commitment. In return, the worker asks the organization for satisfaction of physiological and sociological needs while the job is being done.

This becomes an exchange process whereby the worker perceives that one must receive an equal payment in need satisfaction for the efforts contributed toward the organizational goals. If the worker cannot satisfy such needs, then contributions to the accomplishment of organizational goals will stop by either quitting the job or by withholding energies and abilities and doing just enough to "get by."

No doubt, you have come in contact with people who are not receiving what they perceive to be equal payment from the organization in the satisfaction of their personal goals. The real problem is usually found in the work itself or the work environment. The work "isn't challenging enough" or "could be accomplished by a person with half my skills" are common complaints. In such cases, managers can take positive steps to alleviate workers' discontent by providing a work environment which

- challenges the workers to use their abilities
- recognizes the workers' accomplishments
- promotes helpful, supportive superior-subordinate relationships.

tool that seeks to match the individual's goals with organizational goals. Its objective is twofold: to meet organizational goals and to increase the vitality and commitment of workers to those goals. Management by objectives properly used helps tap human potential. It helps to ensure that those involved know what is expected of them, what is to be done, and how these accomplishments are to be measured.

THE NATURE OF MANAGEMENT BY OBJECTIVES

Management by objectives is a process which seeks to integrate the needs and goals of an organization with the needs and goals of the worker. In management by objectives, the superior and subordinate jointly discuss goals, specify the subordinate's goals, and appraise the subordinate's performance in relation to those goals.

The goals serve as guides for operating the unit and evaluating the achievements of each member in the unit. Managing by objectives focuses on the results to be attained.

ESTABLISHING MANAGEMENT BY OBJECTIVES

Figure 6-1 shows the steps to establish management by objectives.

Step 1—The starting point is your accurate and up-to-date understanding of the organization's overall goals. You derive your unit's goals from the overall mission. They support the overall goal. Seeing the broad picture is like putting a jigsaw piece in place; you gain a clear perspective of your unit's relationship to the larger goal.

Step 2—The second is for you to examine your unit's mission, based on your understanding of the overall mission. The unit's mission is the reason for your group's existence and the focal point for all activity.

Questions to ask yourself as you examine your unit's mission are:

- What is the scope?

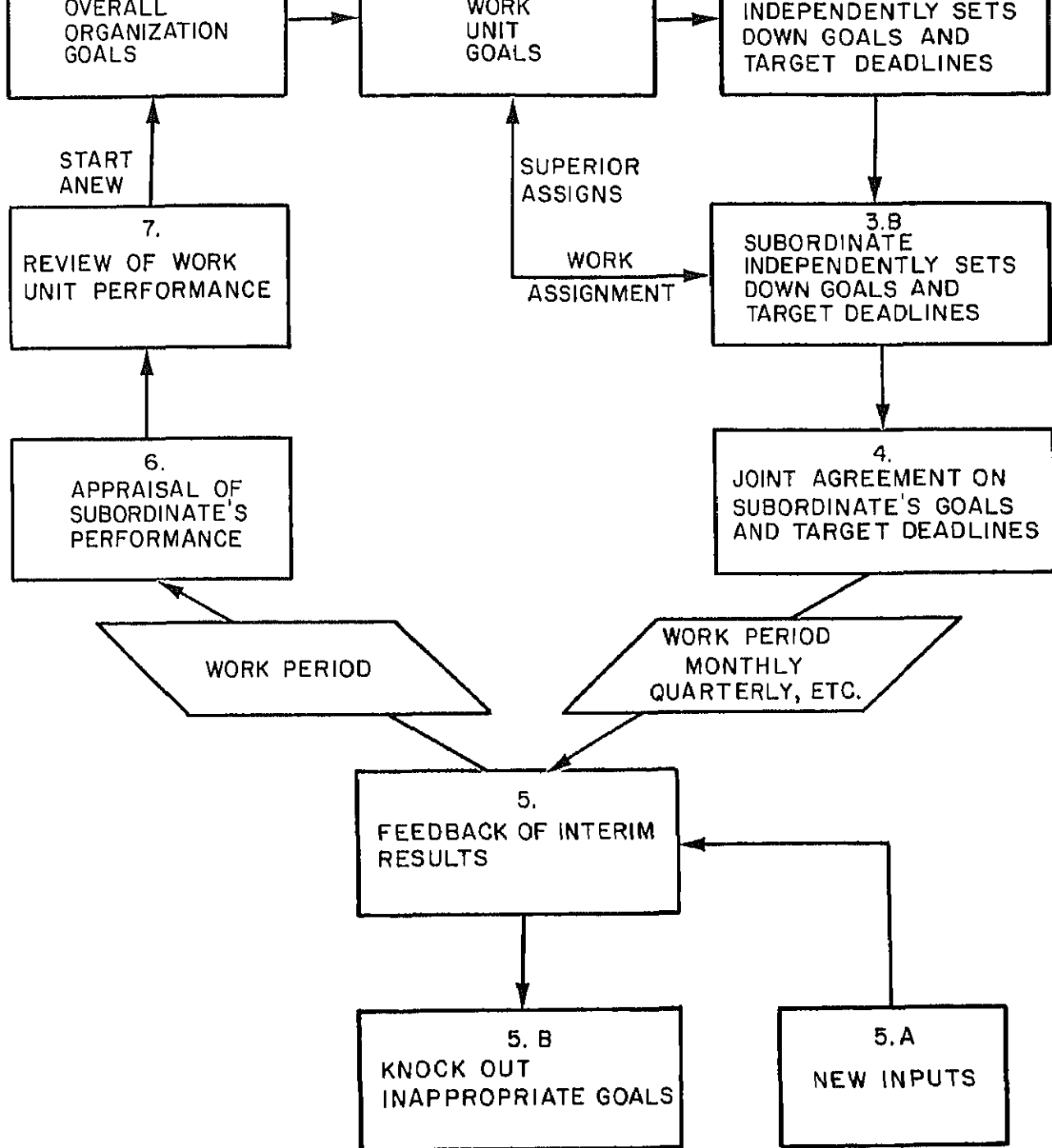


Figure 6-1.—The Steps to Establish Management by Objectives.

- If you accomplish the mission with the efforts of your group, what exactly would you want to happen?

- Are outside activities or departments involved in accomplishing the mission? Who must support your efforts?

- Are your people committed to accomplishing the mission? If not, how will you get their commitments?

- Do all members of your group understand the unit's mission and how it helps to meet the overall mission?

- Do the members know the parts they play in meeting the unit's mission?

- What outside activities or departments does your unit affect?

Step 3-A—At this step, you establish specific objectives. These action steps are essential and will focus all efforts upon accomplishing the unit's mission.

Your action steps should be:

- Specific—They must describe exactly what action is to be taken.

- Measurable—The results must be measurable if you are to determine if the action step was effective.

- Time-phased—Target deadlines determine the progress of the action steps.

It is easier to apply these criteria to some objectives than to others. Some objectives are highly specifiable while others are less so. The following examples illustrate how goals should be stated:

POORLY WORDED

Reduce repair time

A BETTER STATEMENT

Reduce repair time on the unit's machines by 10% for the next 6 months

POORLY WORDED

Work on machine X

A BETTER STATEMENT

Complete overhaul of machine X by 1 March

POORLY WORDED

Reduce rush at end of projects

A BETTER WAY

Specify how:

Put up schedule board for all to see. Talk to group.

You can see from these examples that even when dealing with less specific objectives, in the third example, one can go a step further and specify HOW a particular objective is to be accomplished.

You should consider the following questions as you set specific objectives for your unit:

- What are the present objectives and how were they established? Are there any changes in the overall organization mission that necessitate modification or revision of present targets?

- What goals should have the highest priority? It is unlikely that I will be able to simultaneously complete each action step. What steps should be first?

- Do the action steps contribute to the unit's work mission? If not, why take the action step?

- Is each action step specific and measurable?

- Which actions are short range and which are long range?

Your next step is to take a closer look at each specific job.

- What conditions will exist when this objective is being accomplished? Are there any obstacles? If so, how can I overcome or minimize them?

● What are the limits of my responsibility?
Must I coordinate efforts with other work units?

● What procedures must we follow?

● How complex is this job?

● How routine is this job?

● Which subordinate has the capabilities and skills to accomplish it? Is additional training necessary? Is it within the person's power to meet the objective? If not, must I delegate additional authority or make adjustments within the unit? Are there external factors beyond the individual's control such as lack of materials, waiting for higher decisions, or revised regulations? (If so, I cannot hold the individual solely responsible for meeting the target by a specific date.)

Step 3-B—Management by objectives emphasizes mutual goal-setting by both the superior and subordinate. The subordinate is actively involved from the beginning in determining personal goals and target deadlines. After you assign a specific responsibility to the worker, you should ask that worker to consider the job in all its aspects and to propose personal goals. The worker should know the overall responsibility of the unit and how an assignment helps meet that responsibility. The criteria for the worker's goals are the same as yours for they should be:

- specific
- measurable
- time-phased

The worker should analyze the goals and anticipate what obstacles may be encountered in accomplishing them.

Step 4—You and the subordinate jointly discuss the subordinate's goals. This discussion should contribute to a good working relationship with the subordinate, should motivate the subordinate to meet required goals,

one of mutual exploration for concrete, realistic, and attainable (with some built-in challenge) goals. Emphasize the job's concrete aspects and what needs to be accomplished, rather than how it is to be done.

The final decision is your responsibility. In reaching your decision, both you and the subordinate will benefit from an exchange of ideas, suggestions, and knowledge of the job and working conditions. This exchange of viewpoints usually results in a better understanding of the job in all its aspects, the job's relation to the overall goal, and of each other.

After you make the final decision, put the goals in writing for future reference, retain a copy, and give a copy to the subordinate.

Setting goals in an atmosphere of mutual endeavor and cooperation increases the worker's motivation and level of performance. As the worker contributes ideas and firsthand knowledge of the job, the worker is more likely to support your final decision and to willingly direct efforts to meet the goals. One of the most significant research findings in recent years is that superior results occur when the supervisor and employee together set specific and attainable goals rather than merely discuss needed improvements.

Step 5—Feedback of interim results should be scheduled monthly or quarterly and answer the following questions:

- Is the worker meeting the mutual goals of the individual and the organization?
- Have working conditions changed?
- Are there additional requirements?
- Am I doing my part to help the worker reach personal goals?

Flexibility is the key point. You ask your subordinate to review progress in meeting the mutually agreed upon goals. You ask the person if there are unforeseen difficulties or new developments. You mutually agree to eliminate inappropriate goals if circumstances have changed and you reach agreement on new goals, if necessary, as described in step 4. Be sure the

that are being done well, if it is deserved. Your recognition will reinforce the person's efforts to do the job well and will enhance the expectation of successfully reaching personal goals. If the subordinate has made some mistakes, coach on how they can be corrected. Use positive feedback and constructive criticism, when possible.

If an unexpected problem occurs, you can set the stage for finding a solution. Here is how a subordinate described a superior who dealt with a problem situation constructively:

"He indicated in many ways that I was neither stupid nor to blame for the problem. He accepted my problem as a matter of course.

He helped me to see the value of working on the problem and he encouraged me to find a satisfactory solution.

He seemed aware of some of the reasons for the problem.

He helped me to find a positive approach to the problem.

He asked me valuable questions about the nature of the problem.

He helped me to see the need for diagnosing the problem before finding a solution.

He helped me to set up criteria for a revised goal and target deadline."

Such an approach builds a worker's confidence to overcome obstacles, encourages the worker to improve performance, and helps the worker to find a satisfactory solution.

Step 6—This step takes place upon the expiration of the target deadline. Management by objectives is sometimes called appraisal by results because you appraise the subordinate's performance according to the job's concrete phases and how well the subordinate met the goals that were established in step 4.

The subordinate also evaluates personal performance. The worker actively participated in the goal-setting process from the beginning,

appraisal and therefore the worker's performance can be measured by the progress made.

At this time, you can learn the subordinate's personal feelings about the job, the opportunities the worker seeks to learn new skills, the potential for learning more responsible jobs, etc. You can then more accurately identify the worker's needs for growth and development with those of the organization and start to formulate new goals as described in steps 2, 3, and 4.

The appraisal step in the goal-setting process is a planning device, rather than a control device. Your role shifts from the empirical evaluator and defender of the appraisal you have given the person to one who helps improvement of performance and the development of new skills. Your role shifts from judge to coach.

Research data from hundreds of supervisor-subordinates indicate that the performance appraisal step in the goal-setting process has superior results in comparison to the formal ratings approach traditionally used by the supervisor. Research findings of supervisor-subordinate reactions are as follows:

The goals approach built in a sense of mutual endeavor, of working together to find solutions to shared problems. The ratings method resulted in a sense of isolation between them.

- Both the supervisor and subordinate expressed greater satisfaction when they worked together in pursuit of a common goal. Their mutual efforts contributed to a good interpersonal relationship. Performance appraisal under the ratings system resulted in a neutral, passive attitude, particularly by the subordinate.

- The subordinate felt a greater responsibility to change and to accept responsibility under the goals system because the person had some influence over the situation. Under the ratings system, the supervisor felt a responsibility for the subordinate to change but the subordinate felt no such commitment.

Step 7—As specific goals are met, you should take stock of how well your unit is meeting the overall organizational goals. You compare the work unit goals you set in step 2 with how well they are accomplished.

THE MANAGEMENT BY OBJECTIVES (APPRAISAL BY RESULTS) APPROACH COMPARED TO THE TRAIT APPRAISAL AND CRITICAL INCIDENT APPROACHES

Other commonly used methods for appraising employees are the trait appraisal and critical incident methods. In the former, the supervisor rates an employee on certain traits as attitude, accuracy, appearance, cooperation, capacity to develop abilities, perseverance, patience, etc. In the latter, the supervisor appraises an employee on specific incidents of personal behavior which depart from accepted ways of behaving, such as failure to use proper procedures or to properly carry out instructions.

When compared to the appraisal by results approach, the other two methods have several disadvantages:

- The supervisor acts unilaterally since the appraisee is not given a set of standards against which the employee will be measured.
- The supervisor tends to remember recent events.
- The employee does not participate until the review.
- The employee is placed in a passive position and may be put on the defensive when measured against these criteria.
- Past behavior is emphasized rather than planning for future goals.
- Evaluations are subjective.

In contrast, the advantages of the appraisal by results methods are obvious:

- The appraisee participates in setting personal job related goals.

- Specific standards are used to measure performance.
- Appraisal is more objective because the subordinate is evaluated on the results achieved.
- Emphasis is placed on the subordinate's past performance and future goals.
- Planning for the subordinate's future goals takes place at various steps.

SUMMARY

Management by objectives, sometimes called appraisal by results, is a managerial tool that seeks to integrate the individual's needs on the job with the needs of the organization. In management by objectives, the manager makes certain that the unit's goals support the overall goal. The manager sits down with each worker and together they establish the work goals the worker should meet. This discussion should be in a spirit of cooperation and mutual exploration for concrete, realistic, and attainable (with some built-in challenge) goals. The worker is personally involved in determining work goals and can assume some self-direction and self-control of behavior. The worker is thus able to satisfy the need to do worthwhile and beneficial work, to grow and develop professionally on the job, and to have a satisfying relationship with superiors. As a result, the worker is likely to have a greater commitment to the work goals and to do a better job.

Management by objectives lets a worker know what is expected and that measurement will be made by results achieved. It is understood that the evaluation of the worker will be objective and fair.

Management by objectives is an effective tool for integrating employee and work goals and improving employees' performance.

CHAPTER 7

THE LEADER AND THE GROUP

Each of us during our lifetime belongs to many different groups—the family, church, clubs, civic organizations, and not the least important, the group in which we earn a living. These groups have a deep and lasting influence on our lives. They help form our attitudes, opinions, and basic values as well as our disciplinary and social controls. Each group is a potent force in regulating our behavior.

Everyone desires to be an integral part of some social group which is one of the basic urges. The most severe punishment in penal institutions is solitary confinement, away from all human relationships. A person must have more than an intellectual understanding of membership in a group. That person must feel that he is also an important, contributing member of that group.

Understanding the behavior of your group often challenges your leadership skills. Although groups are always made up of individuals, you can't always understand your group by studying its individual members. Neither can you see a forest by studying single trees. Group interaction makes the group as a unit greater than the sum of its parts.

To deal with your group, you carry out task and maintenance functions. Task functions are the production and technical aspects of your job—planning the work, completing reports, checking technical data, etc. Your maintenance functions are the things you do to develop the cohesiveness of the group and the esprit de corps of your people. This chapter is about your maintenance functions for your group—the things you do to maintain the effectiveness of your unit in terms of interpersonal relationships.

To understand a working unit in the overall organization, let us look briefly at the organization from two aspects—the formal and the informal organization. The formal organization consists of the way that people and resources are officially assigned on paper to carry out a mission. It is reflected on such documents as organization charts, the chain of command, watch, quarter, and station bills. It indicates what each person is officially expected to do. But people frequently do more things, or do them differently, than is officially stated. They bring their own judgment, interpretations, needs, skills, attitudes, and common sense to bear in their work situation. The way people actually carry out work assignments is the functioning organization, sometimes called the informal organization.

In this chapter we are concerned with the informal organization within the group, the interaction between its members, and your relationship to the group. Effective small groups are essential to any organization because their efforts determine the success of the larger organization. By understanding the workings of the small group, you can make your group a better group.

WHAT IS A GROUP?

A group exists when there is

- Interaction between two or more people
- A sense of mutual identity and awareness

- Performance toward a common objective

A hundred new recruits arrive for boot training. They are taken off the train at the same time, marched off to the station, put through an examination routine, and later, put through a training schedule. To the outside observer these people constitute a group mainly because they happen to be at the same place at the same time. However, they are better described as a bunch.

Now look at the crew of a destroyer escort. Some crews may behave somewhat like a collection of men, initially, but before long, they begin to show characteristics of a group. There is tight organization, with leaders and subleaders playing their proper roles. There is systematic division of labor. The men know one another and talk about themselves as "we." They are proud of their ship and identify themselves by the name of their craft. Such a collection of men is not a bunch. Now the term "group" better describes them.

Both of these collections of people are groups. The raw recruits do interact with one another. They are at least aware of each other. But the "bunchiness" gives way to a group feeling only when the members identify with the group and begin to use the term "we" to refer to themselves.

If the recruits identify themselves as class 107C or as the "Boys from Barracks 64" they become more group-like, and if these recruits adopt the goal of having the best barracks or the best recruit company things then begin to happen. There may be spontaneous organizations and division of labor within the regular organization, and the members will cooperate with each other to advance the group's goal.

When a bunch of people are assigned to a ship, they likewise become more group-like in their behavior when they collectively evolve or accept a group goal—(the best division on the ship, for example), when they have a sense of belonging, and when they wholeheartedly accept their leaders and the official divisions of labor.

group must be mentally and emotionally rewarding if an individual is to join enthusiastically and wholeheartedly as well as officially. Of course, not many people will accept themselves coldly, "What's in it for me?" before they pitch into group activity, but the outside observer can notice that individuals do not really get into a group unless the group satisfies some of their needs. If being a member of the group fails to pay off mentally and emotionally, the individual may stay there and work, but he will not work and stay strictly as an individual—not as a real member of the group.

If you successfully guide and orient the group, the group itself can then do much to satisfy the basic needs of the individual members. When the members of the group can satisfy their needs in the work situation, good human relations usually exist in the organization. The unit spirit is high, good attitudes prevail, and as a result the members do their best work. In return, the members receive "satisfaction pay," which is as important to them as their money pay.

When a group fails to receive satisfaction, the results are apparent in the attitudes and effectiveness of the members. For example, unusual anxiety in a number of otherwise stable individuals in a group may become apparent. This reaction usually indicates leadership failure or a behavior problem. If the leader has a good understanding of leadership responsibilities and of human behavior, then the individual and the group can be guided toward the mission. But if there is a breakdown in planning, goal-setting, communication, or performance the group may bog down.

REWARDS OF GROUP MEMBERSHIP

What needs does membership in a group satisfy? If we can answer this question, we can better predict when a bunch will become a group or when a group will disintegrate into a bunch.

By nature, people are gregarious. They like to belong with and to be accepted by others. There is some basic satisfaction in human companionship. If left alone, one generally is lonely and will seek the company of others.

But sheer liking to be with other people is not enough to account for the formation of groups. It is more likely to account for bunches. Belonging to a group involves more than fulfilling purely gregarious impulses. The group gets organized and committed to common goals. The individual will pitch into group activities if given a feeling of secure belonging. Individuals need the security of having a set relationship with their fellow members, a definite role to play, a place in society. One joins a group and contributes to its activities if these desires can be satisfied. One's status may be high or low, it may be as a leader or a very lowly follower, but there seems to be a great comfort in having a definite and defined place in a group—a definite role to play. If an individual cannot figure out the rules by which the group operates, if one day a member is "in" with the leader and the next day, for unknown reasons, the person is in the "doghouse," or if today a person has a certain relation with fellow workers and tomorrow is treated differently, then the insecurity resulting from this experience is likely to drive the member from the group. One needs to see how the group operates, needs to know who is who and what is what, needs to see how advancement takes place in the organization. If one knows these things, life in the group takes on a desirable stability and meaning. If one doesn't or can't know these things, the group then becomes a source of frustration for the person.

If the group rejects or thwarts the individual, there will be trouble. Conversely, the individual can reject the group by failing to carry the proper share of the load and by acting antisocially. Your job as a leader is to try to prevent such conditions and to correct them if they do occur.

Not only does the individual need a structured, meaningful, and secure relation with fellow members but the individual also needs to feel important, to have a good self-impression. One needs a social status among one's fellows. If a group promises status, promises an opportunity to be a contributing and respected member, a person will likely join that group. If the group treats the individual as a nonessential, unimportant hanger-on, the impulse to get out will be strong.

The status of an individual in a group is actually a matter of how the individual feels about status. We can't assume that a person's position as chairman of the entertainment committee guarantees that the person feels important or that the newest and lowest member feels like a nobody. It depends on how the individual feels about the position. And what one feels depends on how one defines success. The man who regards himself as good presidential timber will not be happy if elected secretary, while the man who has great awe for other members of the group will feel successful if merely accepted as an apprentice. Success, in terms of status seeking, is defined in terms of the person's own hopes and expectations.

The rawest recruit can have status in your group without being a CPO or even a rated sailor. If you use the individual's name, recognize that crewmember is from "such and such" a state, take a friendly interest in the person, that may be enough at the beginning to make that person "feel like somebody" in the unit.

Status Because of the Group

The strong and ever-present need for status comes into the picture in another way. Not only may the individual be somebody in the group, but one's expression of self may be considerably elevated simply because of group membership. If the group is well thought of in the community, if it is exclusive, if it accomplishes much, if it is looked up to by nonmembers, then the individual who wears the badge of membership

members than furnish them with a place to play golf. The fraternity group does more for a person than arrange social functions. And certain honorary groups have as their sole function the building-up of the egos of their members. The individuals in any group, given a decent chance, will work to make the group into something of which they can be proud.

Again we must remember a person's level of aspiration. The individual who is shooting at the social moon, may derive no satisfaction from belonging to a group lower than the individual's aspirations. Whether people feel pride of membership depends on the height of the star to which the individuals have hitched their hopes and desires.

Accomplishing an Objective Through Group Action

There is strength in numbers. A person may join with others in a group endeavor because a group is more powerful and more effective than a number of individuals working alone. When a number of individuals share a common interest or common need, the natural thing is to organize, to join forces to gratify the common need.

In general, an individual joins a group when it meets the needs for social contacts, for secure relationships with fellow members, for status, or for a combination of these needs plus other more direct and primary needs. Whether or not an individual pitches in with any specific group depends on what that group promises. One group may promise little other than financial advantages. Another may offer only a satisfying set of social relations with people. Another may offer only honor and glory. Another may offer all these satisfactions in some degree. In other words, the individual's motives for joining a group come in patterns. The overall pattern is different for each group joined.

THE INDIVIDUAL'S RELATION TO THE GROUP

We have talked in general terms about groups and how they can change from bunches

Now, in somewhat greater detail, we will look at the individual's relation to the group in which membership is held. Discussing these aspects should help you understand group phenomena and should give you leadership tools with which to work.

IDENTIFICATION WITH THE GROUP

Individuals may feel very much a part of a group to which they belong or they may treat it with complete indifference. One may sacrifice one's self for the welfare of the group, may identify very personally the group's success or failure with one's own, may feel guilty if one lets the group down. When this is so, we say the individual is closely identified with the group. If the individual doesn't care what happens to the group, is not inclined to make sacrifices for it, dopes off, fails to carry a proper part of the load, then the individual's identification is weak. In the former case reaction is to the group as if it were to the self: the individual and the group's welfare are one. In the latter case the group is quite distinct from the individual self. The person goes pretty much his own way, with personal welfare and the group's welfare being two different matters.

A person identifies with a group for the same reason that one joins a unit—that is for a satisfying and orderly relationship with other members, personal rewards, and the prospect of being somebody within the group and within the larger social world. When we deal with identification, however, we are not dealing with an all-or-none matter. Once in the group, one identifies with it to some degree. One may identify very slightly, to a moderate degree, or up to the very hilt. And the degree of identification is proportional to the rewards the individual gets from membership in the group.

When the group pays off to all its members when everybody identifies to a high degree, the group becomes a very active group. It does great things. It does not fall apart when trouble comes. It works hard and fights hard.

one another. In short, the group is cohesive; its members stick together.

Social and emotional payoffs are the main things that make an individual identify with a group. A person says, "I will pitch into the group if it gives me a secure relation with my fellow workers, if I am somebody in the group and because of it the group helps me satisfy some of my personal needs."

Other forces influence a person's identification. In the first place, succeeding is more important than success. It is likely that you will not identify with a group that is successful as strongly as you will with one that is succeeding. At first glance, this may seem contradictory or, at least, illogical. Remember that success is the endpoint of achievement and thus the motivating drive associated with achievement is lost. This is especially true if you have had little or no relationship with the process that led to the success. Your personal identity with the successful group is, at best, indirect. On the other hand, if you join a group that is succeeding it places you in the midst of the dynamic experience related to success. It gives you a meaningful identity with the group. A feeling of progress is a psychologically powerful thing. And for your identification to be the highest, you must have the feeling the group is improving, is getting somewhere, is reaching its goal. The expectation of success is important in increasing your enthusiasm for the group.

In the second place, it is fairly clear that the nearer the group is to its goal, the greater your identification with it will be. Generally, a person works harder and better the nearer that person comes to fulfilling a personal goal. This means the members of a group need to see their goals clearly if they are to work best. They will not get as enthusiastic about winning the war as they will about sinking the enemy cruiser on the horizon.

The nature of the group's goal has a lot to do with the members' identification. The more definite the group's goal is and the more absorbing its importance to the group, the

become. As the group's goal looms larger in the minds and lives of its members, the members tend to achieve a more definite identity and a more powerful urge to action. We may see this development in a voluntary organization such as the CPO Club. When the members attend a routine business meeting, little identity, cohesion, and spirit may result. But when the club undertakes a project that all its members consider important, it becomes a more definite group, and the members identify themselves more closely with the group. The group also tends to be more structured and organized. Each person has a job to do and the group accepts the authority of certain members.

If you and others work together as a recognized team, something happens that didn't previously exist. You are now individuals and a team, whereas before you were only individuals. Although no material object has been added to your group, something has been gained. You with the others become a group; you collectively acquire an identity in addition to your individual identities. Your group, in a very real sense, has a life and an identity all its own.

This discussion about identification is meant to give you a set of mental tools that will help you to better understand the wide variety of groups that you will encounter. Now, let's see how our principles apply to actual groups.

We have said that identification is the feeling that the group is MY group; the readiness to work for the group as I would work for and defend myself. And we have said that identification is equal to the amount of psychological income the individual gets from the group.

Now let's compare how two individuals identify with the Navy. First, take John Doe who has been in the Navy 14 years and who has just made chief. He is married, has two children. He has the reputation of being one of the best all-round machinists in the Navy. He has many friends—most of them in the Navy, too. He is well-known and respected by officers. Many of the officers he served under as a white hat are now admirals and captains. He numbers them among his friends. He is very proud of the Navy. It's HIS Navy. He is a Navy man all the way.

Roe, who has been in the Navy 4 months. He is 20 years old and after graduation from high school, he worked as a salesclerk in a local men's clothing store. Then he enlisted in the Navy to fulfill his military obligation. He finds Navy life strange and sometimes uncomfortable in comparison to his civilian life. He is willing to learn but he just doesn't understand the way the Navy works. When someone says "deck" instead of "floor" or "chow" instead of "breakfast" it still seems strange to him. Although he wants to serve his country, he looks forward to completing his Navy enlistment and returning to civilian life. When he is home he never misses a chance to wear civilian clothes; he enjoys seeing all his old friends at the store. When someone makes a wisecrack about the Navy, he never argues with them. It's not HIS Navy. He's merely in it for a while. He'll do his job in the Navy well enough to get by, but rarely any better.

Chief Doe has security in the Navy. He has a career. He has learned a technical specialty. He is an expert machinist. The Navy meets his need to see some of the world. For him, the Navy life is a life in which many of his important needs are satisfied. All this helps him identify with the Navy.

In contrast, Roe doesn't plan to stay around long enough to learn a specialty and achieve a security. His job is back home. His girl is back home. His life is back home. In his mind, the Navy satisfies few, if any, of his needs. So he fails to identify with the Navy. He wants "out."

There they are. A CPO who is typical of many CPOs and a Seaman Apprentice who is also typical of some people in the Navy. We might be tempted to say the CPO is a valuable man and that the SA is just lazy or doesn't give a hoot. Before reaching these conclusions, let's analyze these men in terms of the psychological income they receive from the Navy.

A Satisfying, Structured Social Environment

CPO Doe knows his way around in the Navy. He knows the rules—both the written ones and the unwritten ones. He can operate within these rules and get along very well.

sibilities as a CPO. He knows what is good and what is bad in the Navy. He knows how to get ahead in the Navy and the reefs and shoals to avoid to stay out of trouble. He knows how to get along with his officers. His Navy life is all structured, all clear to him. The Navy makes sense to him.

SA Roe, on the other hand, finds Navy life confusing. He definitely doesn't know his way around. He is not sure about what is good and what is bad. Some of the Navy rules, particularly the unwritten ones, confuse and bewilder him. He does what he thinks is a good job and nobody notices. He does what he considers a poor job and sometimes gets away with it. Navy life is strange to him. He feels unsure and insecure. For him, the Navy environment is unstructured. This feeling may vanish with time, but at the moment Roe fails to identify with the Navy because he isn't at home with its way of life.

The CPO has many friends in the Navy. He understands Navy people. His social life has a decided Navy flavor. He likes it that way. The Navy meets his social needs. This helps increase his identification with the Navy way of life.

Roe, on the other hand, while he has a few new friends in the Navy, often wishes to be with his real friends back home. He writes home that "There are some good people on my ship but I'd sure like to see George and Charlie again, just like old times." The Navy does not satisfy Roe's social needs—not yet, at any rate, and hence his identification is low. A man is not completely a Navy man unless his friends are Navy friends—and are numerous.

STATUS WITHIN THE GROUP

CPO Doe is somebody in the Navy. He not only wears the insignia of his grade and rating but he has a reputation as one of the best men in his rating. He is personally known by many Navy people, including some high ranking officers. He has, as a CPO, a definite

prestige. He is somebody important to the Navy. The Navy needs him. These feelings, perhaps more than anything else, make the CPO identify with the Navy. He will work for and defend an organization in which he is recognized as an important member.

SA Roe, on the other hand, is a nobody in the Navy. "Even my CPO," he writes home, "just says 'Hey you' when he wants me. I might as well wear striped pants and have a number for a name." Roe has lost some of his individuality in the shuffle. His CPOs and officers don't bother to treat him as an individual with a particular name and a particular background. After several months in the Navy he still is a nobody. Certainly it is understandable if he fails to regard it as his Navy.

STATUS BECAUSE OF THE GROUP

CPO Doe is proud of the Navy. He knows and believes in the Navy's traditions. He volunteered for the Navy, has worked hard for the Navy, has seen the Navy come through in some tough spots. When he wears his uniform ashore he's wearing the uniform of men he knows and admires. He wears the uniform of heroes, some of whom he knows personally. He is proud of it and wears it with an air. It means something to him.

To SA Roe the uniform is a monkey suit. It is not the uniform of people who have served honorably and sometimes heroically but is an outfit worn by a lot of others just like himself and who are all counting the days until they get out. Among his friends back home, being in the Navy is no particular sign of prestige. When he tells a friend he is in the Navy, the friend is as likely to express his sympathy, as he is his approval. This certainly does not increase his identification with the Navy.

These portraits illustrate how satisfactions work to make or break a person's identification with a group—any group. The CPO gets many satisfactions from being in the Navy. Roe, for

CPO identifies and Roe does not. This does not mean, of course, that all the Roes are losses to the Navy. Some of the Roes often become very fine sailors. And often, though they may not identify with the Navy as a whole, they do identify with their ship or their unit and give very valuable service. Their CPOs have a lot to do with the course the Roes take.

POSITION WITHIN THE GROUP

If we look at the group, we see that every individual in that group has a position. Some—the leaders and the "important" members of the group are at the center of things. Group life centers about them. They make the policies and form the plans. Others are on the edge of the group. They just hang on. They form no policies, make no plans. They are in a peripheral position.

If we were drawing a map of the complement of a cruiser, we would put the captain at the very center, with the executive officer and various department heads close to the center, junior officers next, CPOs next, rated people next, and nonrated ones away out at the edges. This map describes most military groups.

The map that depicts a group of CPOs who are organizing a chief's club would be different. At the center would be the CPO who is the elected leader. Then there would be many other CPOs close to the center. Such a group has to be a democratic group, for almost every CPO wants to get in on forming plans and policies. Nearly everybody is close to the center. Only a few uninterested individuals are left on the periphery.

You probably have known many Navy groups where the first sort of map does not quite fit. You have known groups where CPOs felt closer to the center of things than indicated in the first example. Some leaders consciously work to bring all hands closer to the center of things. Many commanding officers make it a point to pass the word to everyone under their command—what the plan is and how it is working out. This serves to bring people nearer

edges of groups can make an input, when they know the channels of communication are open, when they know something about what is happening at the center, they feel they are closer to the hub. And this is an important feeling. If you don't believe it, recall your own experiences in Navy groups. Isn't it true that you worked harder for the groups in which you were near the center—in groups where you felt your judgment was important, in groups where you knew where the group was going and why?

This illustrates a basic premise about groups. A person's identification with a group often depends upon the position the person holds in the group. If one is near the center of the group, identification with the group is likely to be strong. If a person is out on the edge somewhere, that person is not so likely to form a personal identity with the group. It is somebody else's group and that person is merely tagging along. Given the slightest excuse, the person on the edge of things may leave and identify with some other group.

There is another thing to remember about position. It's this: actual position and official (or formal) position are not always the same. If the official captain of a football team fails as a leader—or goes to pieces in emergencies or begins showing extreme partiality—the map of the group changes. The official leader is no longer the functioning leader. The captain keeps the title but the team looks to someone else for leadership.

This sort of thing happens in military groups too. You probably know of groups where the real leader was not the official leader. Military leaders are given a central position. They don't always keep that central position in spite of official organization. It sometimes demands great skill for the official leader—you—to remain the real leader of military groups.

PARTICIPATION IN THE GROUP

In any group, you will find some people doing things about the group and other people just standing around. And in some groups everybody does something while in others almost everybody does nothing.

Identify with the group. People often identify with a group because they can participate in it. If this is so, then one way you can increase identification is to find ways in which your group's members can participate and help the group along. The more the participation, the greater the identification.

You can't take a bunch of uninterested people and make them into an integrated group by simply making them work. There apparently has to be some degree of identification with the group before participation takes hold. But if the individual has some desire to help the group, then one's identification goes up as one's activities in the group increase.

Now, let's think back for a moment to SA Roe. If you want to do a little mental exercise, tackle for yourself the problem of getting Roe to identify strongly with your unit. How would you make him (and the other Roes) feel like somebody? How would you make them proud of their units, of their ships, and of the Navy? What could you do to satisfy their important needs? How can you do all this—without pampering anybody? Here are some clues to these questions.

EFFECTIVE GROUPS ARE POTENT GROUPS

When all members of a group identify strongly with a group, the group is called potent. A group's potency can be defined as the average identification of all its members. A group with which all members strongly identify is a highly charged group. It has great potential for action. But a group with which all members identify weakly will not be much more than a collection of individuals.

It is clear that the Navy wants potent groups. To create potent groups we work to make all members identify strongly with the group. It is important that all members identify. If the leader concentrates on making the group satisfying to one or a few of its members, the

leader may increase the identification of those few but may ruin the group's potency. One will be accused of playing favorites. This may make the favorites work, but the identification of the nonfavorites can be counted on to sink rapidly. To increase the potency of your group, then, you must work to increase the identification of all your people. To increase their identification you must make their being in the group pay off. All your people must derive some psychological income.

CREATE A SECURE AND SATISFYING SOCIAL STRUCTURE

The first way you can make your group pay off is to create for all your people a secure and satisfying social structure.

Let Every Person Clearly Know What You Expect of That Person

If you are to have power over me, if your decision will promote me or send me to the brig, it is important to me that I know what you expect of me. If I'm not sure what you deem good or bad, I can easily come down with the jitters. If I'm not sure what are the rules, exactly what my job is, and what your peculiarities are, I'm likely to feel unsure of myself. These can be the thoughts a new person has when joining a group or those of one who has been in the group for a long time. The leader should accordingly ensure that those who follow know what are the rules, what is expected of every person, and just how rewards and punishments are to be handled. This helps those who follow to feel secure.

Here's an example of how one CPO gave the group this sort of security.

"Our new CPO was a lot younger than Chief J. We rather liked Chief J, but our new chief seemed to do something for us. The second day, the new chief

had had and the sort of work we liked to do. About a week later the new chief called us all together after muster and made a little speech suggesting how we operate. Each person had a certain job and each person was expected to do it well—without being watched. Also the CPO told us how discipline was going to be handled. It was done that way, too. We felt pretty good about it. We knew where we stood. You can work for a person like that."

This CPO understood what a "structured or orderly environment" is and set about making one for our group and as a result had a much better group.

If people are to be secure in a group they must know where they stand and what is expected of them.

Create an Atmosphere of Approval

Subordinates do not feel secure unless they believe their leader approves of them. They enthusiastically dislike the powerful leader who suspects them, distrusts them, and disapproves of them. You should, by your behavior and attitudes, show your people that you like and trust them. If you create an atmosphere of approval, your people are less likely to resist your use of the dominant leadership style when the situation makes it necessary; they are more inclined to follow you willingly.

Make a Plan and Tell Your People About It

Few things can disturb members of a group so much as to be caught by a change of plans about which they have not been told.

If the group obviously ought to be doing something, but nobody seems to have any idea of just what or just how, then confusion

The leader has to have a plan. The leader has to know what to do if the group is to pull together and operate as a group. Plans are important in the everyday routine and they are particularly important in an emergency. When there is danger, when the heat is on, the leader must keep the group together with a plan for action. If the leader doesn't, the group is likely to fall apart for lack of organization. It is important that the members know the plans so they can see where they are going and why they are going there.

Be Consistent

If I am a powerful leader and you, this time, are one of my followers whom I can toss into the brig or have transferred or recommended for promotion, you are in a quandry if I change the rules on you without your knowing it. If one day I bawl you out for working your people overtime and the next day I bawl you out for not working them overtime, you are likely to be confused and to be mad and resentful of me. If you need to win my approval (and that means you are dependent on me) you need to know the rules before you can win my approval. If I punish you today for spending 10 minutes drinking coffee in the CPO mess and tomorrow I suggest that you go below and relax over a few cups, there is no way you can tell what I like and what I don't.

Your crew, if they are going to feel at home in the group, need to know the rules. You must make the rules clear and consistently enforce them. If you are a good leader, your disciplinary problems will be few. If your crew identifies with the group, they will want to obey the rules. But if you are inconsistent in handing out rewards or punishments, the group will suffer. It will also suffer if you have favorites who get rewards and whipping boys who get the blame. People are more secure if they know that reward and punishment come to them because of their behavior and performance and not because of your whims, moods, or preferences.

Have a Friendly Group

we like our co-workers, we will work better for the group. You can often do things to keep your group working together in a friendly way. Maybe you'll have to get rid of, or convert, a sorehead or two. Maybe you'll have to give friendly advice to individual members to help them adjust to the group.

And if you are reasonably friendly yourself, it helps. Don't put yourself on a pedestal. You'll get on it if you aren't careful. And Americans don't go for pedestals. They prefer leaders who can work with them, laugh with them, sometimes play with them. This does not mean that you've got to win popularity contests but it does mean that in most situations you can be friendly, approachable, interested, encouraging. This helps make the group socially rewarding to its members; they feel they are a team.

GIVE YOUR PEOPLE STATUS WITHIN THE GROUP

The second way of producing identification is to develop each individual's status within the group. The person who belongs, who is somebody, is more likely to identify than the one who is a nobody hanging around the edge.

Treat Each Person as an Individual

It is essential that you do everything possible to make your people feel that they are vital parts of your unit. Extend a personal welcome to each newcomer. Make the person feel wanted and needed. Discuss assignments and let it be known for what, for whom, and to whom the newcomer is responsible. After such a welcome, people should feel there is a definite place for them in your unit and that they are off to a good start.

But your work is not over, for not all the members will accept newcomers as you have. Some will attempt to place them on probation until they prove themselves. You, by your

All persons must be continually assured that they belong to the team. It is an endless process.

Here is the way one CPO made all people feel a real part of the unit. Place: the I.C. shop aboard USS _____

"Every morning the Chief would be there at 0730 and have coffee with the group. Individuals were always asked how they were. If a person didn't say good morning to the Chief he said good morning to him first. When the Chief greeted you the tone of his voice assured you of his sincerity. Then everyone would talk over what we were going to do that day. Everyone had a chance to give ideas as to how we could do a better job, whether we were working on that job or not. Due to that, our work benefited from the experience of all the people.

"Since the Chief always gave us a 'fill-in' ahead of time on work to be done we knew what was coming up except when an emergency should occur.

"The Chief always said 'our gang' when speaking of the I.C. gang, never 'My gang.'

"He went through sixth grade in school but made Chief in 8 years."

This CPO did several things that made each member of the group feel like somebody.

- A personal interest was shown in their welfare.
- They were asked for their ideas and the Chief listened to them.
- Everyone was treated as an individual.

Look After the Welfare of Your People

Another way of giving your people status within the group is to do things for them, to

it is a religious principle.

When you get the best for your people, when you protect them from unfairness, when you see that they have every comfort and convenience that circumstances permit, you are telling each person: "You are important. You deserve the best."

If you take all the comfort and the leisure and the credit, you are indirectly saying to each of your people: You are a nobody, only I am a somebody. You don't rate in my book. It isn't hard to imagine how a group will react to that.

Your need to support your unit cannot be overemphasized. When your crew believes that you are looking after their best interests, that they can depend on your assistance and genuine interest, that you will be fair and impartial in all your dealings, you not only build their trust and confidence but their reciprocal support for your efforts. In a mutually supportive climate, your crew will help you when the going gets rough, when there's a big deadline to meet, when they have to give you that extra effort to do the job. You have a mutually "win-win" situation.

MAKE YOUR PEOPLE PROUD OF THEIR GROUP

A major way of helping your people identify with a group is to build their status because of the group. If your crew proudly tells friends that they are stationed aboard USS *America*, or the PC 196, then they identify with the group. Pride strengthens identification. To capitalize on this principle, we have to find ways to make people proud of their units. Although this is sometimes difficult, it can be done and doing it pays off.

A general rule is that a group has to be distinctive in some way before its members can be proud of it. It has to stand apart from other groups for its members to boast about it, tell others about it. Here are some tips to help your unit have an identity all its own.

"This CIC team is the best gang I have ever belonged to. We are a good outfit." If you look behind this sailor's pride in the CIC team, you will likely find that the CPO is smarter, goes to bat for the crew more often and more successfully, and generally is a better leader than most. This sailor thinks the other members of the team are better people than those in any other team. When one has such feelings about the group, that person will tell the world about it. Maybe the gang will get a distinctive nickname. When this happens you know the group has arrived as a group. It is really satisfying to its members.

People are Proud of Units That are Distinctly Successful

Everyone likes to win and they like to be associated with a unit that wins. If you arrange for your group to do a job so well that other groups hear about it, you can expect your people to show great pride. They will talk about the group and make it a point to tell everybody that they belong to it.

If you know your group well, you can generally find something which it can do well. Even if that something is no more earthshaking than the winning of the checkers championship of the ship or the softball game when the ship is in port, you ought to encourage your group to do it—as a team. Almost any group success increases the group's potency.

But use caution when you promote recreational activities in striving for your unit to excel. Be careful about using man-hours in nice but secondary activities not directly associated with the mission. Remember that your first job is to be ready for wartime operations, and to find activities that will enhance the skill of your unit to meet its ultimate objective. There are many other units comparable to yours, and to be tops in any category is not always easy. It is best for you to compare your unit with similar ones and decide just how your unit might be outstanding. The possibilities are unlimited.

You like to feel important and you like to feel your work is important. But there are a lot of people in the Navy who fail to see the importance of their jobs. They don't see that what they are doing has much to do with either winning or preventing wars.

You can increase your group's feeling of importance by pointing out to your people how their work fits into the overall scheme of the Navy's mission and their ship's mission. These are small things. But anything that helps them see the importance of their work is worth your time and effort.

CREATE REALISTICALLY CHALLENGING GOALS

Effective groups are succeeding groups. The effective unit—and the effective individual—is one that anticipates success. The gunnery crew of a ship that sets out to win the gunnery championship of their division will work vigorously toward that goal only if it is getting somewhere and has a fair chance of winning. If the members are convinced that it is impossible to achieve this goal, they will not really try. The unit will be ineffective. The unit that expects failure will be depressed, erratic, and without zip—and likely to experience failure.

Groups will work hard if the goal is realistic and within reach. If the coach of Short Pump State College tells the team of small but sturdy football players they are expected to beat the number one team in the country, the coach is unlikely to get much work from the team. Such a goal is unrealistic. As it is so high, no member of the team has any real hope of success. But if the goal is to score on the number one team, there will be more enthusiasm. The team will work hard to perfect the plays that will let them score on their opponents. They will work equally hard to get ready for a game next week with a neighboring team that has licked them 10 times in the last 16 encounters. That is a goal that might be reached.

college team that hasn't won a game in 7 years, the members of the team are not likely to work hard either. As it's such an easy goal, it challenges nobody.

The goal must be realistically challenging if the group is to work toward it with energy and commitment.

You can easily apply this principle to Navy groups you have known.

A former heavy cruiser captain, recounting some post World War II experiences, tells this story:

"We had a spirited crew and my officers were bright and eager youngsters. But only about a third of my people knew one end of a cruiser from the other. Green—very green. Officers and enlisted men alike. Our experienced people had mostly gone home after the war was over. But we would still have been a good ship if it weren't for the training schedule they sent us. We just couldn't keep up with it. We tried. Everybody tried. But we just could not accomplish the things our schedule called for. Our people were just too green to do the maneuvering and learning they said we should do. Things went from bad to worse. My officers were practically ready to jump overboard. The men were all unhappy. I had to step in and set our sights lower. When we started at a realistic pace toward reasonable day-to-day goals, we settled down to good work again. Nobody felt like they wanted to commit suicide."

When goals are set too high, the group will not function well. Frustration, unhappiness, and resentment are the likely results. Goals that are set at a realistically challenging level promote good morale within the group.

The tip here—and it's a practical one—is this: Don't expect the impossible from your people unless there is a reasonable chance for achievement.

NEAR-AT-HAND GOALS

It's hard to get excited about something that will happen 50 years or 100 miles from here. We live in a world of here-and-now. It's unnatural for a ship's crew to take as its goal the winning of the Efficiency "E" award 5 years from now. But it is natural for them to get excited about winning the "E" award this year.

Five major things that you can do to create potent groups are:

- Create a secure and satisfying social structure
- Give your people status within the group
- Make your crew proud of their group
- Create realistically challenging goals
- Create concrete, near-at-hand goals

BENEFITS OF GROUP SOLIDARITY AND ESPRIT DE CORPS

When the crew feels that they are an essential part of your unit and when they have a constant sense of pride in the strength and purpose of the unit, you have esprit de corps.

Esprit de corps is a deep and enduring feeling of loyalty to, and confidence in, the unit. It is akin to the feeling you hold for your country, for your school, or even for your family. It is blended with a feeling of the collective strength of the unit and confidence in that strength. In esprit de corps, you have a winning combination that will give you victories in peace or war. When you achieve esprit de corps, your job of leadership is more than half done.

In combat, this feeling of identification with the unit, this drawing of confidence and security from group solidarity bestows its ultimate value.

of each crew member and that of the unit are one, is a good guarantee that the crew members will work and fight with the unit. Once one is this much a part of the unit, strength and courage are drawn from its mass and power. The crew member thinks, perhaps without realizing it, in terms of the unit's objectives rather than personal objectives. One willingly subordinates personal interests for the good of the unit. In a large measure, this determines combat effectiveness.

Group solidarity is extremely important to individuals who become captives of the enemy. Prisoners of war need the feeling of team unity to help maintain their courage and to resist any brainwashing and interrogation by the enemy, and in many cases to stand mistreatment and torture by the enemy. Many accounts from the Korean and Vietnamese conflicts bear this out. Identification with the unit, the feeling of group solidarity, gives each person greater strength and courage to withstand enemy efforts.

Unity of the team is important in all situations and at all times, in peace and war. Only through teamwork, developed during close association, will your crew have faith in their unit. Napoleon attributed his defeat at Waterloo to the belief that his men "had not eaten soup together long enough."

Your crew must work with one another in supportive ways; otherwise your unit will disintegrate into bickering cliques and you will have a house divided. A person must feel that, like himself, his associates are competent people on whom the person can depend in any situation. No one can do the job well if there are constant questions as to whether their fellow workers are properly accomplishing their part of the job.

YOUR RELATION TO THE GROUP

When you understand the type of group you are leading and when you practice your social skills, you can do practical things to improve the effectiveness of your unit. You now have the foundation for a practical approach to group effectiveness.

you encounter are of many kinds. The things you do in leading one group will be different from those you do in leading another. A practical understanding of how groups generally operate will help you to diagnose and prescribe for any group you may be called upon to lead.

WHEN CHANGE IS NECESSARY

You may find it necessary to make changes in your unit--changes that will build confidence, increase efficiency and esprit de corps, and raise morale. What can you do to decrease people's resistance to change? Frankly, there is no simple answer, no cure-all.

People who do the same thing the same way over a period of time form habits. They become accustomed to doing it one certain way. Naturally, they are often reluctant to learn a new way; the established way is satisfactory to them. To lower their resistance to doing it a new way you (1) help them see the value of the proposed change, and (2) allow them to participate in planning and instituting the change. Here are some additional guidelines that can help a great deal.

Never change for change's sake. When things are going poorly, the temptation to make changes is great. Reorganizing, changing procedures, or changing people too often seems a cure-all; yet rarely is this the case. Such simple reasons as misunderstanding of present procedures, improper training of personnel, failure to delegate authority when assigning responsibility, or poor supervision are often the real causes of failure. You should carefully and fully evaluate the situation before you institute changes. Change that does not improve is wasteful.

If possible, wait until you are firmly established in your job and have the confidence of your people before making changes. Subordinates often develop a strong sense of loyalty to their supervisor. To make changes immediately after beginning a new job is to

imply that the previous supervisor was incompetent. This may generate distrust and resentment that will be hard to overcome. A thorough knowledge of your job and the confidence of your people help you to institute change effectively.

Seek the advice and counsel of your people before making changes. As we have previously stated, people are more likely to accept and support the change when they have an active part in planning for it and putting it into effect.

Plan and take positive steps to alleviate threats to the safety, belonging, esteem, and self-fulfilling needs of those affected by the change. When reorganizing, try to assign people to jobs equal to, or at a higher level than, their previous ones.

Head off fears of change by keeping all who will be affected fully informed. Rumors snowball quickly; don't let them start.

Be honest with your people; let them know how they will be affected. Tell them what steps are being taken to protect their security, status, and their present mode of living.

Follow through on changes to nip possible problems in the bud. Make sure that the change is properly carried out, and make corrections as necessary. Practice this principle of leadership: Ensure that a job is understood and accomplished.

STRIVE FOR GROUP UNITY

A group tends to accept most readily and to give its best responses to you when you successfully unify and stimulate your group. People like to follow the person who can organize a group, give it an identity, and inspire its allegiance to a common purpose.

Successful leaders initiate ideas or, what is equally important, support and develop the ideas of others. They reconcile disagreements and give the group the information it needs

HELP THE GROUP TO ACHIEVE ITS GOAL

A successful leader helps the group to move toward its goal. The leader inspires the enthusiastic effort and cooperation of the group. The leader is an expert in bringing out the best in followers and directing them toward the mission in the quickest and surest manner.

When you help the members achieve their common purpose, you are well on your way toward becoming the real leader of the group. By real leader we do not mean the person who controls the group solely through legal authority. Rather, we mean the person who exerts influence through knowledge, competence, creditability, and understanding of group dynamics and human relations.

KNOW YOUR PEOPLE

Morale is high in a unit in which each member is allowed to work at a person's highest level of responsibility or satisfaction. You should know the abilities of each crew member so that you can assign responsibilities that allow the member to use personal skills and abilities. You should also assign responsibilities that have some built-in challenge and that result in growth and development on the job.

The organization that you set up should identify the tasks to be accomplished, specify who is responsible, and indicate the formal lines of communication. Your group should operate in such a way that it recognizes and protects the individual's position. Lines of communications and responsibility should provide answers to questions about what is to be done, who does it, and how well it is being done.

The leader sets the rules of the game and the systems for rewards, punishments, and advancement. The members of the unit want credit when they do a good job. They want to be looked upon as individuals, not as cogs in a machine. To satisfy their need for recognition, the leader must take a genuine personal interest

In summary, the effective leader supports the crew and channels their energies toward constructive work goals. The members of the OI Division, USS _____ summed it all up in a letter they wrote to their Chief just before the Chief's transfer:

"At this time, it seems altogether fitting that we, as your division, should express what it has meant to us, having you as our Chief. For some, you are the fourth personality we have had to adjust to as our leader. For others only the first. They know not how lucky they are.

"The person who follows you will have a big vacuum to fill. At the risk of sounding sentimental, may we say 'Thank you, Chief.' Because of you we are a group, a functioning body. If there has been a problem, a gripe, or a questionable situation, you have given us a way to turn. Your ideas and your enthusiasm have been contagious.

"Our hours are rotten and some personalities have seemed unendurable. But you have been the mainstay and the smoothing stone over many bumpy times. You have opened your home to

us. You have given freely of your time, your energy, and your enthusiasm. We, as your division, would like to take the opportunity to say 'Thank you.'

"May the coming years and your new stations be the best. We are proud to be serving with you."

SUMMARY

The group is a strong force in regulating our behavior. Being an active member of a group satisfies one of our basic needs: the need for social acceptance and approval. People obtain ranking in a group in proportion to the degree of acceptance by the others in that group; for example, a person who is energetic and active may be ranked more highly than a person who does just enough to carry his or her load.

Your people will work hard toward a goal provided the goal is realistic and within reach. People will work harder toward a goal if the results can be seen in the near future rather than in the distant future.

Successful leaders support and develop the ideas of others as well as their own. They allow their people to have an input in the planning and the execution of a job.

CHAPTER 8

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND DECISION-MAKING

Solving a problem and making a wise decision challenges a leader's abilities to analyze a problem and to apply sound judgment to resolve a situation. Often there is more than one solution to a problem. The leader must select the decision that will most likely produce the desired results with a minimum of undesirable side effects. This is what management, supervision, and leadership are all about. They are specialized skills that demand the best you have to give.

Making a decision is closely related to solving a problem. Each of us constantly faces choices between alternative actions. Each day we decide what to do and how to do it. Most decisions that we make each day are routine and may have no real significance in our lives. However, some of the decisions we make affect our lives for days, weeks, or even a lifetime. The skill and intelligence we use to make decisions concerning the situations we routinely face each day may well determine the outcome of our personal and professional lives. In this chapter, we discuss the problem-solving and decision-making process that contributes to effective leadership.

UNDERSTANDING THE PROBLEM

A problem can be understood after it is thoroughly analyzed and can be stated in words. The manager who lays out problems in an orderly way stands a better chance of reaching the right outcome than the person who relies on snap judgments.

As you explore the problem, you need to

that have unusual conditions that require ingenuity and imagination. For example, the mail dispatching staff that is faced with an unusual amount of mail knows that extra effort and perhaps extra time will get the job done. But, if there is an unusual number of complaints about wrong addresses, accompanied by a mounting pile of uncompleted orders, then you have a more complex problem.

A problem can generally be solved if a manager grasps its nature, gauges its true dimensions, decides what to do about it, and takes immediate steps to cope with it. A responsible manager breaks a big problem down into small, easily tackled units, changing a vague difficulty into a specific concrete matter.

MAKING THE DECISION

The ability to make sound decisions pertains to all phases of leadership and management. Sound decisions, made and carried out on both major and minor matters, help determine long-term success both for you and your associates.

Ask yourself the following questions:

- Is decision-making a process? Can it be analyzed and broken down into steps?
- Is it a skill that you can learn and improve with use?
- Can you teach others how to make sound decisions?

is neither an easy nor a routine task. The lengthy, complex process of exploring and analyzing that precedes the decision itself is one of a leader's most challenging responsibilities.

Decision-making has four phases:

- Analyze the situation
- Find possible courses of action
- Evaluate possible courses of action
- Choose the optimum course of action

This sequence is, however, far more complex than it first appears. Each phase for any particular decision is in itself a complex decision-making process. There are wheels within wheels within wheels. Nevertheless, these four broad categories appear again and again when you observe the decision-making process in operation. These decision-making phases are closely related to stages in problem-solving first described by John Dewey, the educator:

- What is the problem?
- What are the alternatives?
- Which alternative is best?

To reach a rational decision, you go through mental gymnastics that approach the following sequence. You ask yourself:

- Is there a need for a decision?
- What is the situation?
- What is the nature of the problem situation? Must I set priorities if the problem has more than one facet?
- What are the possible courses of action?
- What will be the consequences for each course of action?
- Which alternative is the best in terms of

- What is the plan of action and schedule for carrying out the decision?

- What alternative plan of action is to be taken if the original decision fails?

In each of these eight steps several decisions may need to be made. Therefore, the process becomes a logical, systematic, step-by-step procedure. It starts with the identification of the problem and progresses to the determination of its cause. Then it goes on to the development and selection of a solution which is finally and fully safeguarded by sound control procedures.

When broken down this way, decision-making sounds complex. However, if this process is studied, the techniques understood and seriously used the next few months, each time you are up against a tough decision, it should become a natural part of your subconscious process.

Sometimes decisions can be made without following this detailed process. The process should be utilized only to the degree needed. A cardinal rule is that your decision must be adequate to the solution of the problem. There is no use in attacking a tank with a peashooter, and it is equally undesirable to shoot sparrows with a cannon.

A simple issue as to whether or not to use black or white paper for a report cover does not require a detailed approach to a decision as herein outlined. On the other hand, a problem that requires a solution instead of routine handling deserves a more detailed and analytic approach to sound alternatives and responsible action.

THE EIGHT STEPS OF DECISION-MAKING

The bulk of most people's work and lives is composed of routine matters which can be satisfactorily disposed of by snap judgments or routine procedures. Be alert, nevertheless, to recognize the exception, the situation that calls for applying the following process to make a wise decision. Let's examine this process in

Poor decisions often result because we fail to recognize the problem and act on impulse. The first step in sound decision-making is the ability to recognize problems that require solutions instead of routine handling. We need to detect the intangibles as well as the tangibles in the work environment. These intangibles include the attitude of your people toward their work, each other, and the organization. The tangibles include their level of performance, the personal factors that influence their performance, and the quality of work they turn out. For example, suppose that the people we supervise are to turn out 500 units of work per month. As long as this happens each month there is no problem. However, if you discover that last month only 250 units were produced the problem is apparent. The ability to see and identify most problems of this type is simple. It is more difficult to discover problems that involve people's feelings, emotions, and attitudes because you must perceive the individual and have an understanding of human behavior. Open communications and feedback in an atmosphere of mutual trust are vital to recognizing this type problem.

Perhaps we merely sense by an uneasy feeling that things are going wrong. When your intuition tells you to take another look—do so. Sit down and figure out what is actually going on and what should be happening. If there is a difference, you have a problem—and it's the difference between "actual" and "should."

It helps to ask yourself a few questions:

- Is the situation different from what I usually face?
- Could the "off the top of my head" answer be wrong?
- Is the situation beginning to look more complicated as I give it more thought?

A "yes" answer to these questions on a situation that might be important calls for cautious handling—not snap judgment. You will have a high lifetime batting average for making

successful in this first step; namely, that of knowing when there is a real need for a decision.

SECOND, WHAT IS THE SITUATION?

If you have pertinent facts about a situation you have the basis for making sound decisions. Situations do not just happen. They come about for various reasons. Something different, new, or unplanned occurred to change the situation. Your job is to ask, "What happened? What caused the problem? What are the circumstances?" The more relevant information you gather, the better chance you have of making a sound decision.

Making a sound decision requires self-discipline and an objective point of view. Gathering relevant information takes time because it requires careful analysis. So-called facts are often misleading or wrong. There is a need to resist the strong temptation to take a few obvious pieces of information, hope they are relevant and important and then make a quick decision. Have you heard both sides of the case? Are you certain that a systematic fact-finding campaign has been waged? Do you really know the facts from which to draw conclusions? Have you talked to all the people who may have pertinent information? Have you objectively evaluated all their opinions before reaching a conclusion? These are the types of questions that must be raised to make certain that all pertinent facts are available. Anything short of this depends on luck and sheer chance in order to make a sound decision.

You should organize the facts and analyze what you have that is significant. The story is told of the harassed gentleman who came into the local newspaper office to place an ad. It read, "\$500 reward for return of my wife's large black cat." The editor, with raised eyebrows, queried, "Why offer \$500 when \$5 would be ample?" "Well," the gentleman replied, "It pays to have the facts. You see, I drowned that goll-darned cat 3 days ago." There is no infallible way to make sound decisions. However, when you approach the point of decision by analyzing your problem you stand a better chance of reaching the right outcome than if you rely on snap judgment.

down into small easily tackled units. Facts are statements about events or conditions, imagined or real, which represent realities. Nothing brings your subordinates into the picture more effectively than asking their advice when you are trying to solve a tough problem. This not only builds the staff's self-confidence—it may turn up some facts and good ideas that you may never have considered. To make a sound decision, it helps not only to have all the available facts but to know what facts are missing. This permits you to make allowance for the gap and to decide how rigid to make your decision.

Fact gathering changes a vague difficulty into a specific concrete form. It tidies up the problem and lets you move on to the next step.

THIRD, THE NATURE OF THE PROBLEM—PROBLEMS AND THE PRIORITY THEY ASSUME

The next step in systematic decision-making is to identify the real problem from the apparent problem. Sometimes you may identify the symptoms of a problem situation and fail to recognize the deeper, underlying problem. As a decision-maker you must not only recognize the problem but you must also identify and treat the underlying causes. A doctor treats not only the fever of a disease but searches for the basic cause of the illness by examining the patient's medical history, recent changes in physical and mental condition, and living habits, etc. A leader uses personal understanding and analysis of human behavior to discover the basic cause of a problem situation.

Problems often come in bunches, like grapes. Identifying the problem will determine whether it is a single item or two or three things that need decisions. Priorities must then be set. It's often a good course of action to solve the problems one at a time, to avoid confusing the issues. To know which problem is the most important, you rate them. This requires making comparisons. Which is the most urgent? What is their relative seriousness? etc. Also, you need to consider the availability of pertinent information. You may save time by solving one problem ahead of another if the facts are not

priority, you are ready to determine the alternative courses of action.

FOURTH, WHAT ARE THE ALTERNATIVE COURSES OF ACTION?

You now analyze the facts gathered to help you understand the situation. You study the available information as it is collected to see what you can learn from it. Actually this is a good point to mention that the steps in developing a sound decision are overlapping procedures—not scenes in a play where each act is completed and finished before another starts. The analysis of data requires a high degree of judgment. Significant points begin to stand out. In general, the average decision-maker will face these conditions:

- The decision-maker may have more data than there is time to use it.
- The decision-maker may have facts without the necessary knowledge to process them.
- Some data may be dangerous to use.
- Some facts are useless.
- Data may show up too late to be useful.
- The decision-maker may fail to get some facts that are needed for successful problem-solving.

There is no formula for analyzing data to determine its significance. Basically it involves looking at the facts separately and collectively, and searching for meanings and the reasons events happened. From this process new and different ideas begin to develop. The possible solutions to correct the situation are firming up.

Clear identification of the possible separate courses of action is important in answering the question. "What are the various decisions I can make to solve the problem?"

The key point is to develop a number of different courses of action. The reasons are

Begin by listing every practical course of action. At this point try to think creatively. You want to make certain you consider all possible courses of action. At this stage do not list the pros and cons of each possibility.

This step demands time and energy. It tests your initiative, creativity, and imagination. It challenges you to be objective in your thinking by not letting your personal biases assume importance. It asks that you forego making judgments about people in the situation until all the facts are collected. It demands that you be flexible in your thinking and that you consider new approaches to solving the problem. When you carry out this step well, you are in a favorable position as you head into the final steps of decision-making.

FIFTH, WHAT WILL BE THE CONSEQUENCES

At this stage of decision-making, you need two columns for writing down the points "for" and "against" each alternative course of action. Ask, "What will happen if...? Does this course of action take care of A, B, and C possibilities?" Include long- and short-range advantages and disadvantages. When you do this seriously and honestly, you have a good analysis of the various alternatives.

Any one of several decisions can correct a problem. However, not all possible courses of action are equally good. Your task is to compare the alternatives and decide which one is best.

There are three criteria to use. Ask yourself:

- Will this course of action achieve my objectives?
- Is this course of action feasible?
- Will this alternative action have any undesirable consequences?

with good reason to hope that it will be a sound one. This step is often the simplest and easiest of the whole process.

Evaluating the possible courses of action logically leads to selecting one of them. This is, however, a last opportunity to review your choice—to take a second look prior to committing yourself to a definite course of action:

- Are you certain that it will accomplish your objectives—will it correct or change the condition requiring a decision?
- Can the people affected carry it out? Can you do it with the available resources?

Above all, reconsider the consequences by thinking ahead and actively seeking to visualize all the possible results of this particular decision. This involves testing every step leading to the decision and anticipating the results.

The responsibility of decision-making involves the risk of going astray. The consequences of a decision are part of the total problem and should be considered as essential elements in the decision-making process. You must balance risk against gain and be neither deterred nor dazzled by either. Consider how your decision will affect the person's or group's desire to work. Short-term gains must be weighed against the long-term objectives.

Excuses for postponing a decision are easy to find. However, long delays in making decisions often result in wasted time, loss of teamwork, and forfeiture of confidence in management. Postponement may be wise in certain cases when it is warranted. Remember, however, that to make no decision is in fact a decision that must be fully justified.

SEVENTH, WHAT IS THE PLAN OF ACTION AND SCHEDULE FOR CARRYING OUT THE DECISION?

Now that you have made a decision, the next step is to take action. You must not only

The following control procedures will alert you to take corrective action, if needed:

- Anticipate what you will do if things go wrong. Seek ways to head off or prevent adverse results. Realize that obstacles are certain to show up. The road may be strewn with rocks but that may only mean that it is a rough road, not that you are going in the wrong direction.

- Set up a warning schedule. You need a well laid out schedule or timetable which tells you when you are likely to approach the danger signals as you progress toward the goal.

- Compare what actually happened during each phase with the objective. Here you establish standards that incorporate the actualities of the situation.

- Develop a system for getting information about your program as it progresses. You need to decide who will be responsible for keeping an eye on things, when they should report back to you, and how.

EIGHTH, HOW WELL HAS THE DECISION WORKED OUT IN PRACTICE? IF IT FAILED, WHAT ALTERNATIVE CAN BE TAKEN?

Consider changing your course of action if you learn some important new facts that appear to alter the situation. Consult in advance all those who are to be affected by the decision because you need their cooperation. No decision can be better than the people who must carry it out. Their cooperation and understanding are essential if you must redirect your course of action.

Have other alternatives from which you can choose if the original decision proves to be unsatisfactory. Often the most carefully thought-out decision will prove to be ineffective if circumstances change. If you have thought through alternatives as you make your decision, you have something to fall back on. Backup alternative courses of action are essential if you must change course without delay.

problem. You can ask your subordinates for their feelings because they are the ones who must implement the decision. Since they are actively involved in the real-life work situation, they are in a good position to give you suggestions, criticisms, and recommendations. Their feedback of information enables you to modify or cancel your decision as you deem necessary. Feedback also furnishes a reservoir of information that you may draw upon to develop a new course of action. Feedback helps you to evaluate accurately the situation and to make decisions that fit the circumstances.

When you make a decision keep the following points in mind:

- Clarify and analyze all proposals before moving toward decisions. Ask yourself such questions as these: Why is this necessary or desirable? What can it be expected to accomplish? How can it be worked out? Who will do it? Who will be affected by it? What harmful situations might result?

- Superior decision-making rests on a solid basis of preparation, with a grasp of all the ramifications and possibilities. When you reach a tentative conclusion, try to knock it down with dispassionate energy. Ask yourself: "What will happen if. . . ? Does this decision take care of possibilities A, B, and C?" By proceeding in this way a manager borrows the scientific method and spirit: the resolute asking of the questions "What else?" . . . and "What if?" . . .

- Pay attention to detail in the preliminary stages, while always keeping in mind the end purpose. Toscanini, the great music conductor, is quoted as saying: "In rehearsing a musical work, the important passages often take care of themselves; it is the supposedly unimportant phrase or line that needs careful consideration."

- Be flexible in your thinking. Be enthusiastic but do not let it blind you to facts. An opinion about a situation is only something that comes between ignorance and understanding. It is knowledge in the making. To

change an opinion in the face of new facts signifies vitality and progress.

- Think through the proposed decision to its conclusion. Test every step leading to the decision and anticipate what may follow upon it.

IMPLEMENTING THE DECISION

After you define the problem, collect the facts, analyze the cause of the problem, weigh the alternatives, listen to the thinking of others, check the accuracy of your information and of your thinking, decide on the best course of action, the next step is to implement your decision.

It is important to execute it, not to pigeonhole it. An idea has been born, it has evolved, and been transformed into a decision. Now you must set the necessary forces into motion to make your decision a reality.

Anticipate positive results but also face the possibility of unexpected obstacles or even failure. Your positive attitude, enthusiasm, and sustained interest can often overcome obstacles or roadblocks and promote the chances for a successful outcome.

Be flexible and change your decision if you learn some vital new facts that argue against it. But don't change your mind merely because you run into obstacles.

Consider the timing for putting your decision into effect. Favorable work conditions or the availability of qualified people at a particular time can mean the difference between success or failure.

Make sure that those who are to carry out your decision clearly understand what they are to do. Your people must know what change in behavior you expect of them, what change to expect in the behavior of others with whom they work, and what change will be made in the working conditions. Subject your decision to six questions—why? what? when? how? where? who? Once you determine the answers to them,

in the above order, your decision will probably be an orderly organized one.

Mechanical problems associated with your decision are relatively simple compared with human problems. For example, your decision may change the status of workers, and it is astonishing how a person will be annoyed and deeply pained by any seeming wrong done to the worker's feelings of self-importance. Careful advance consultation of all those who are to be affected by the decision gives you the benefit of their experience and their ideas, and makes them participants in shaping the decision.

Human motivations and human emotions are factors in the solution of every problem. The manager must appraise these factors, tap their interest, and assure their cooperation in carrying out plans upon which decisions are made.

Of this be sure: no decision can be better than the people who have to carry it out. Their enthusiasm, competence, and understanding determine what they can and will do.

SUMMARY

A problem can be understood once you put the problem into words and divide it into small, easily tackled units. Solving problems involves decision-making planning. When divided into logical procedures, decision-making involves eight separate steps. These steps are as follows:

1. Determine the problem
2. Determine the situation
3. Determine the nature of the problem and its priority
4. Determine alternative courses of action
5. Determine the consequences of the decision
6. Determine the alternative courses of action to be taken
7. Determine a plan of action and a schedule for carrying out the decision
8. Determine whether the decision has worked or not

CHAPTER 9

TEACHING AND LEARNING

A leader has a responsibility to train people in their present duties and future responsibilities. Most jobs are usually performed separately but they can often be performed together. Equipment is constantly changing, and people must be trained to operate the new equipments. New people in the unit must be oriented in their duties, rights, benefits, and opportunities for advancement. Through effective training, you can develop the potential of your people. Through training, you help meet your subordinates' need for growth and development that we discussed in chapter 1.

You train and your people learn. How you train your people depends largely on your understanding of how people learn and your ability to apply that understanding. This chapter discusses the broad aspects of the learning process which you can apply to any learning situation be it a formal lecture, group discussion, or on-the-job training.

WHAT IS LEARNING?

One of the outstanding characteristics of human beings is that learning takes place continually with all members. The individual learns continuously from birth to death. To understand learning, we must analyze what happens to each person. Individuals' learning experiences change ways of perceiving, thinking, feeling, and doing. Learning can be defined as a change in behavior as a result of experience. The behavior can be physical and overt, or it can be mental or attitudinal, not easily seen. Behavioral scientists generally agree, however,

on some characteristics of learning. A leader should understand the characteristics of learning and apply them to training programs.

CHARACTERISTICS OF LEARNING

LEARNING IS PURPOSEFUL

Each person sees the learning situation from a different viewpoint, because each individual is a unique person whose past experiences affect the readiness to learn and the understanding of the requirements involved. Suppose that the examination for advancement is only a week away. One person may study hard every evening to do well on the examination. Another person may make minimum preparation because it is felt that there is not much chance for personal advancement. Still another may be afraid of freezing up and makes no preparation. Their responses differ because each person acts according to the requirements seen in the situation.

Most people have fairly definite ideas about what they want to do and achieve. Their goals sometimes are short term, a matter of days or weeks. Or they may be carefully planned goals for a career or a lifetime. A person brings these purposes and goals into the work situation. Some of these purposes may be unique and others may be shared with co-workers. A trainee learns from an activity that helps to further personal purposes. Individual needs and notions may determine what is learned quite as much as what the instructor is trying to get the student

instructor seeks ways to relate learning to the student's goals.

LEARNING COMES THROUGH EXPERIENCE

Learning is an individual process. The instructor cannot do it for the student; one cannot pour knowledge into the student's head. The student can learn only from personal experiences.

Learning and knowledge cannot exist apart from a person. A person's knowledge results from individual experience and no two people have had identical experiences. Even when observing the same event, two people react differently; they learn different things from it according to the way the situation affects their individual needs. Previous experience conditions a person to respond to some things and to ignore others.

All learning is by experience, but it takes place in different forms and in varying degrees. Some experiences involve the whole person; others, only parts of the person, such as hearing and memory. The leader is faced with the problem of providing experiences that are meaningful, varied, and appropriate. For example, by repeated drill a subordinate can learn to recite instructions, or to recite the principles of leadership by rote. But the student can make them part of life only if they are understood well enough to apply them correctly in real situations, which can be done if the learning experience has been extensive and meaningful. If an experience challenges the learner, requires involvement of feelings, thoughts, memory of past experiences, and physical activity, it is more effective than an experience in which all the learner has to do is to commit something to memory.

Learning a physical skill requires actual experience in performing that skill. A person learns to fly an airplane only if the person flies one. Mental habits are also learned through practice. If a person is to use sound judgment

such judgments and the knowledge of general principles learned in solving realistic problems has been made.

LEARNING IS MULTIFACED

Later in this chapter, there is a discussion on the various kinds of learning—learning skills, learning concepts, learning generalizations, etc. The separation is an expedient that may seem to suggest that learning is compartmentalized. Actually, the student's full set of learning equipment is always involved.

A person studying radar maintenance may be learning to perform a specific operation, such as changing the radar antennae on certain aircraft. But in the process the student is learning new concepts and generalizations, perhaps learning new applications of electronic principles. The student learns something about handling electronic equipment in general. The resultant experience changes ways the person sees, feels, thinks, and does things, although the instructor may have been primarily concerned with the ability to change radar antennae.

If a leader sees the objective as being only to train the trainee's memory or muscles, the leader underestimates the potential of the teaching situation. The trainee may have learned much that the teacher had not intended, for the trainee did not leave the thinking mind or personal emotional involvements at home, just because they were not included in the leader's training program.

Psychologists sometimes classify learning by types: verbal, conceptual, perceptual, motor, problem-solving, and emotional. Several types of learning may take place at the same time. For example, a group learning to repair a machine may actually repair the machine. In doing so, the group engages in verbal learning and sensory perception at the same time. Each trainee approaches the task with preconceived ideas and feelings, and for many trainees these ideas

Learning is multifaceted in still another sense. While learning the material at hand, trainees may be learning other things as well. They may be learning cooperation and group dynamics. They may be developing attitudes about the subject—good or bad, depending on what they experience. Under a skillful leader, they may learn self-reliance. The list is endless. This learning is sometimes called incidental, but it may have a great impact on the development of the trainee.

LEARNING IS AN ACTIVE PROCESS

The trainee does not soak up knowledge the way a sponge absorbs water. The instructor must not assume that the student remembers a thing just because the student was physically present at a training session when the instructor "taught" it. Neither can the instructor assume that the student can apply what knowledge is gained just because the correct answers can be read from the training manual. For a person to learn, that person must react and respond, physically outwardly, perhaps only inwardly, emotionally, or intellectually. But if learning is a process of changing behavior, clearly that process must be an active one.

KINDS OF LEARNING: THE BASIS FOR METHOD

What is the best training approach? What techniques will best achieve the training goals? To answer these questions, the leader needs a good understanding of the nature of what the student is to learn. Even though the learning process has many aspects, the main objective of a Navy instructor is usually, but not always, the learning of a skill, or of a concept or realization.

Write the word "learning" 15 times with your left hand (or with your right hand, if you are left-handed). Try to improve the speed and quality of your writing.

In completing this exercise, you experience several principles of motor learning which are discussed in the following paragraphs.

Physical Skills Involve More Than Muscles

The above exercise contains a practical example of the multifaceted character of learning. While a muscular sequence was being learned, other things were happening as well. Your perception changed as the sequence became easier. Your concepts of how to perform the skill developed and your attitudes changed.

The Desire to Learn Affects Learning

Thinking back over your experiences in learning to perform certain skills, you may be surprised at how much more readily you learned those skills that appealed to your own needs. Shorter initial learning time and more rapid progress in improving the skill likely occurred. Conversely, where your desire to learn or to improve was minimal, your progress was not as great. A person may read dozens of books a year, but the reading rate will not increase unless one deliberately sets out to increase it. In the preceding learning exercise, it is unlikely that any improvement occurred unless you had the desire to improve. To improve, one must not only recognize mistakes but must also make an effort to correct them. The person who lacks the desire to improve is not likely to make the effort. Consequently, one continues to practice one's own errors. The skillful instructor relates the training objective to the student's intentions and needs. The instructor, therefore, builds on the student's natural enthusiasm.

Follow Aids Learning

One way to prepare the trainee to perform a task is to provide a clear, step-by-step example. When the trainee has a model to follow, that trainee gets a clear picture of each step in the sequence—what it is, how to do it. Often you can provide a demonstration yourself, emphasizing the steps and the techniques. Sometimes an outside expert can demonstrate what is to be done. Films can also be shown. In any case, however, the trainee needs a clear idea of what is to be done.

Performing the Skill Aids Learning

As you experienced writing a word with the wrong hand, consider how difficult it would be to tell someone else how to do it. Indeed, not even demonstrating how to do it would result in learning the skill. Obviously, practice is necessary. The learner needs to coordinate muscles, visual, and tactile senses. Often this requires extensive practice.

Practice benefits the trainee in another way. As the trainee gains proficiency in a skill, verbal instruction is more meaningful. Where a long, detailed explanation is confusing before the trainee begins performing, specific comments are more meaningful and useful after the trainee has begun to master the skill.

Knowledge of Results Aids Learning

A student can discover errors easily while learning simple skills. In learning complex skills, mistakes are not always apparent, or the learner may know something is wrong but not know how to correct it. In any case, you provide a helpful and essential function when you tell the trainee how well progress is being made. It is just as important for learners to know when they are right as when they are wrong. You should

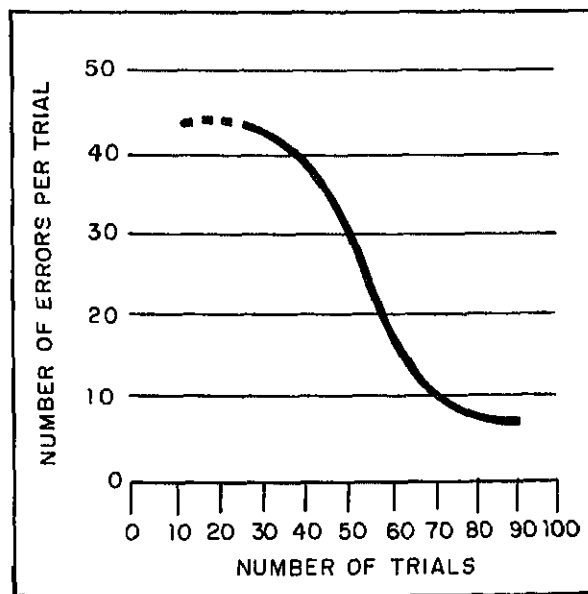
possible after they perform the task, for they should not be allowed to practice mistakes. It is more difficult to unlearn a mistake and learn correctly, than it is to learn correctly from the beginning.

One way to apprise the trainee of progress is to repeat the demonstration or example and to show the standard against which the trainee can compare personal performance.

Progress Follows a Pattern

The experience of learning to write a word with the wrong hand probably confirms what has been consistently demonstrated in laboratory experiments on skill learning. The first trials are slow, and coordination is lacking. Mistakes are frequent, but each trial provides clues for improvement in later trials. The learner modifies different aspects of the skill: how to hold the pencil, how to execute finger and hand movements, etc.

Graphs of the progress of skill learning usually show similar patterns. (See figure 9-1.)



191.70
Figure 9-1.—Graph (an example): The Progress of Skill Learning.

There is rapid movement in the early trials. But the curve levels off and may stay level for significant periods. Further improvements may seem unlikely. Such a development is a learning plateau and may signify several conditions. The learner may have reached the limits of personal capabilities; the learner may be consolidating the personal level of skill; the learner's interest may have waned; or the learner may need a more efficient method for increasing progress. Keep in mind that the apparent lack of increasing proficiency does not necessarily mean that learning has ceased. The point is that a leveling off process in learning motor skills is normal and should be expected after an initial period of rapid movement. You can prepare the trainee for this situation to ward off discouragement. If the learner knows this may occur, frustration may be lessened.

The Duration and Organization of the Lesson Affect Learning

In planning training sessions, the length of time devoted to practice is a primary consideration. A beginner reaches a point where additional practice is not only unproductive but may even be harmful. When the learner reaches this point, errors increase and motivation may decrease. But as the learner gains experience greater benefit will result from longer periods of practice.

Another consideration is to determine whether the practice period should be divided (and perhaps even the instruction) into segments, or whether to plan one continuous, integrated sequence. The answer depends on the skill to be learned. Some skills are composed of closely related steps, each dependent on the preceding one, for example, learning to operate a movie machine. Other skills are composed of related subgroups of skills, for example, learning to fly an airplane.

The Evaluation of a Trainee's Progress Aids Learning

only limited help toward further improvement. The teacher could judge whether the written word was legible and evaluate it against some criterion or standard. The teacher might even assign it a grade of some sort. But none of these actions would be particularly useful to the beginning learner. The learner can profit more by having someone watch actual performance, receive criticism that is constructive, help eliminate errors, and identify what is being done correctly.

In the initial stages, practical suggestions are more valuable to the learner than a grade. However, the instructor should evaluate teaching effectiveness in the beginning stages and identify the learner's strengths and weaknesses, a prerequisite for making constructive criticism. The instructor should also identify special problem areas and predict student learning potential.

The Application of Skill is the Final Learning Criterion

The final criterion for learning is use. Can the trainee use what has been learned? It is not uncommon to find that trainees devote much time and effort to learn new abilities, and then they fail to apply these abilities on the job. To solve the problem, two conditions must exist: (1) the trainee must learn the skill so well that it becomes easy, even habitual for the trainee to perform it; (2) the trainee must recognize the types of situations where it is appropriate to use the skill.

LEARNING CONCEPTS AND GENERALIZATIONS

Teaching for intellectual learning offers a challenge because this type of learning can be only inferred, not observed. A vast amount of literature on experimental psychology deals with the way people learn concepts and generalizations—the ideas to be known, understood, or applied. Briefly, a concept is a mental picture of some sort of thing, with

or more concepts. To illustrate, the definition of learning in the preceding section involves a concept of learning. The characteristics of learning, on the other hand, are generalizations.

A concept is an abstract idea about a class of particular things. Concepts are formed by generalizing one's experiences with a particular thing. Concepts represent concrete objects (airplane, book, dog) or abstract ideas (honesty, leadership).

A generalization is a statement of relationship, usually of wide application. Ordinarily, it is a statement about the relationship of two or more concepts. For example, a person may have formed the concepts of jet aircraft and of loudness. Through experience the person forms the generalization that jet aircraft are loud. Not all generalizations are verbalized. A person may develop the generalization that a certain type of situation brings personal satisfaction. The learner may seek out that situation but not know exactly why. It should be pointed out that the generalizations people form are not always true. People sometimes have wrong ideas about the world in which they live.

RELATING CONCEPTS TO THE LEARNING SITUATION

You will recall the brief discussion in chapter 3 on how we form concepts. Now we shall relate concepts to the learning situation and to your role as a teacher.

First, a great deal of concept formation occurs without the specific aid of teachers. Often concept formation depends on the amount and variety of experience. Extensive experience with a wide variety of encounters often builds valid concepts. What then is your role as an instructor?

You can identify and organize those experiences that provide the basis for forming the concepts the trainee needs. That, of course, presumes that you identify the concepts.

the desired concepts. As the student develops greater experience resources to draw on, a point is reached where profit can be gained from vicarious experience: by listening to well-organized training sessions, and by comparing experiences with other trainees. The key word is experience. Valid, meaningful concept formation must be based on a hard core of firsthand experience.

Second, as an instructor you guard against your trainee accepting readymade concepts or accepting the description of a concept from another person. The trainee has no basis of experience for such a concept; one merely memorizes the words and repeats them on occasion. The handicap becomes evident if there is confrontation with a new situation involving the concept.

The temptation is to believe that the student who can recite the key ideas understands the concepts involved. Unfortunately, this is not necessarily true, a fact that most instructors realize. Yet, there are instructors who still try to teach mostly with words and with too few meaningful learning experiences.

RELATING GENERALIZATIONS TO THE LEARNING SITUATION

As with concept formation, generalizations are formed out of the experiences of the learner. The process of concept formation may proceed at the same time the learner is developing generalizations about the concepts. It is possible to have a well-established generalization and still be a bit hazy about some of the concepts involved. For example, a person forms the concept that "The republican system of government is better than any other system in the world." But at the same time may not have too clear an understanding of what the concept, "other systems," means. In this case, we believe the generalization being presented is correct, but the basis for it is not strong. Such a situation is not ideal, but it can happen.

than the depth and significance of them. The development of generalizations requires not only extensive and varied experiences, but meaningful and significant experiences as well. People develop inaccurate generalizations when they have too little information and experience to use or when they allow their prejudices or biases to influence their interpretation of what they have experienced. They may even wish to believe a particular point of view so strongly that they are misled into accepting it. All these conditions present challenges to you as a trainer and instructor.

Conceivably, learning may be on the verbal plane only; the concepts may be devoid of meaning. To illustrate this point, please memorize the following generalization:

Glunders should be delped ordly.

Now, to test your grasp of the principle, please answer the following questions:

What should be done to Glunders?
How should it be done?

If you memorized the principle well and studied the questions carefully, you probably answered that "Glunders should be delped," and that "they should be delped ordly." Of course, you still do not have the slightest notion of what Glunders are, or how they are "delped ordly." The concepts are devoid of meaning; therefore the generalization is pointless. It has no applicability to your life or problems.

Here are some points for you to remember in training your people:

- Reduce the concepts and generalizations taught so that the student can thoroughly master what has been learned. There is little point in requiring the student to memorize 100 principles if only 20 are being used. Teach those 20 principles so well that they are always remembered and used.

- Provide practical and varied learning experiences so the student can build a solid basis for concepts. Provide significant experiences so the student can develop clear and useful generalizations.

- Be constantly aware of the individual differences among your people. Their range of experience and learning readiness presents a challenge to you in planning for their individual needs. The good instructor always remembers that the training objective is for each trainee to learn.

MAJOR "LAWS" OF LEARNING

Professor Edward L. Thorndike of Teachers College, Columbia University, New York was one of the pioneers in educational psychology. Early in this century, Professor Thorndike postulated several "laws" of learning. These rules or principles are generally applicable to the learning process. In the years since, other psychologists have found that learning is a more complex process than some of these "laws" suggest. While Professor Thorndike's laws have some exceptions, they still provide an insight into the learning process and are included in this chapter for that reason.

The "laws" that follow are not necessarily as Professor Thorndike stated them. During the years they have been restated and supplemented but in essence, they may be attributed to him. The first three are the basic laws, as originally identified: the law of readiness, the law of exercise, and the law of effect. The three laws that were added later as the result of experimental studies are: the law of primacy, the law of intensity, and the law of recency.

LAW OF READINESS

A person learns best when ready to learn, and does not learn much if there is no apparent reason for learning. An instructor usually has the responsibility to get a student ready to learn. If a student has a strong purpose, a clear objective, a valid reason for learning something, more progress is made than if there is a lack of motivation. Readiness implies a degree of single-mindedness and eagerness. When a student is ready to learn, that student meets a teacher at least halfway and this simplifies the teacher's job.

do little, if anything, to inspire a student's readiness to learn. If outside responsibilities, interests, or worries weigh too heavily on a student's mind, if the student's schedule is overcrowded, if personal problems seem insoluble, a student may have little interest in learning. Health, finances, or family affairs can sometimes overshadow a person's desire to learn.

LAW OF EXERCISE

This law states that those things most often repeated are best remembered. It is the basis of practice and drill. The human memory is subject to error. The mind can rarely retain, evaluate, and apply new concepts or practices after a single exposure. A student does not learn touch typing at one sitting. Learning is achieved by the continued application of what has been taught, and every time one practices, learning continues. The instructor must provide opportunities for people to practice or repeat new skills, and must see that this process is directed at a goal. Repetition can be of many types including recall, review, restatement, manual drill, and physical application.

LAW OF EFFECT

This law is based on the emotional reaction of the learner. It states that learning is strengthened when accompanied by a pleasant or satisfying feeling, and learning is weakened when associated with an unpleasant feeling. An experience that produces feelings of defeat, frustration, anger, confusion, or hopelessness in the learner is unpleasant. If an instructor attempts to teach intricate procedures to a trainee who does not know the basic procedures, the trainee is likely to feel inferior and to be dissatisfied. As a demonstration that shows the trainee the appropriate goals, the intricate procedures might help motivate the student. But as procedures to be learned immediately, the attempt to teach these intricate procedures might end in frustration. In terms of the learning objective, this experience would be unpleasant.

negative motivation. Impressing learners with the difficulty of mastering a new skill or solving a problem can make the teaching skill difficult. Usually it is better to show learners that mastering a new skill or solving a problem is within their capabilities. Whatever the learning situation, it contains elements that affect the student positively and provide a feeling of satisfaction. Every learning experience does not have to be entirely successful, nor does the student have to master each lesson completely. But a student's chance of success is increased if the learning experience is pleasant.

LAW OF PRIMACY

Primacy, the state of being first, often creates a strong, almost unshakable impression. For the instructor, this means that what is taught must be correct the first time. Correcting erroneous learning is more difficult than teaching it correctly the first time. If a new piano student learns incorrect finger positions, the teacher usually has a difficult task in unteaching the bad habits and reteaching good ones. Every student should be started in the right direction. The student's first experience should be positive and functional so it can lay the foundation for all that is to follow.

LAW OF INTENSITY

A vivid, dramatic, or exciting learning experience teaches more than a routine or boring experience. A student of literature is likely to gain greater understanding and appreciation of Shakespeare's play "Macbeth" from seeing it performed than from merely reading it. The student can often learn more about firefighting from watching a fire demonstration than from listening to a lecture on the subject. The law of intensity implies that a student will learn more from the real thing than from a substitute. Mockups, slides, movies, charts, posters, photographs, and other audiovisual aids can add vividness to your instruction. Demonstrations also intensify the learning experiences of trainees.

LAW OF RECENCY

Other things being equal, the things most recently learned are the things best remembered. Conversely, the farther a student is removed timewise from a new fact or procedure, the more difficulty the student has in remembering it. It is easy, for example, to recall a telephone number dialed a few minutes previously but it is usually impossible to recall an unfamiliar number dialed a week earlier. The teacher recognizes the law of recency when the main points of a demonstration are carefully summarized. The teacher repeats, restates, or reemphasizes the important points to make sure the student remembers them.

All the laws of learning are not apparent in every learning situation. These laws manifest themselves singly or in groups. If an instructor understands the laws of learning, then it is possible to deal intelligently with motivation, participation, and individual differences, the three major factors affecting learning.

FACTORS THAT AFFECT LEARNING MOTIVATION

The factor that has perhaps the greatest influence on learning is motivation, the force that causes a person to move toward a goal. This force can be rooted in any or all of the personal-social needs of the student; for example, the need for security, for new experience, for recognition, for self-esteem, for conformity, or the need to help others. Such needs compel people to act, to move, to start working toward an objective, or to achieve a goal. An instructor has a responsibility to recognize and identify these needs to the extent possible and then to seek ways to satisfy them through instruction.

To be successful, the learner must have a need to know, understand, believe, act, or acquire a skill. The wise instructor realizes that these needs are not separate and distinct from the personal-social needs of the learner. The instructor must create the conditions that make

students want to learn, and if necessary, must remove obstacles that students sometimes place in the paths of their learning. The trainee must have a reason for learning and if trainees cannot find it for themselves, the instructor must help them find it.

A need to learn presupposes goals or objectives. If the motivation is right, the student knows what these goals are and how they can be reached. In the learning situation, the instructor usually establishes a clear and specific objective for the trainees. Without an objective, neither the trainee nor the instructor can measure progress or evaluate achievements.

Illustrations of weak and strong motivations are all around us. Consider, for example, the student who attends a required course in communications-electronics without any prospect of using what is studied. Since the student's interest in the course is academic and communications-electronics has nothing to do with the job or the future, it is difficult for the student to apply all his energies and efforts to learn the course material. In contrast, if a student knows that at the end of this same course each student will be assigned a job requiring the knowledge of communications-electronics, a goal has been established. The student can partially satisfy the needs for recognition, security, self-esteem, and professional growth by mastering the course material. In this latter instance, even though the need and desire to know are built in, the learner needs and wants to know the objectives of the course and to believe they can be reached.

To meet the responsibility to motivate learners, the instructor can capitalize on whatever built-in motivations the learners have. The big challenge is to shape personal-social motivations to make them serve the learning situation. The instructor must first establish learning objectives and then try to activate forces that cause the learner to work toward them. This is motivation in the learning situation.

PARTICIPATION

Trainees learn best when they are active. Participation in a lesson means action. This

action profoundly influences learning. Because the competent instructor realizes that idleness, either mental or physical, is detrimental to learning, the instructor plans a variety of activities for the student. Activity takes many forms: thinking, listening, observing, recalling, reasoning, generalizing, imagining, writing, discussing, answering, questioning, disagreeing, feeling, touching, moving, doing, and speaking. All help the student to learn.

Whatever the activity, the effective instructor makes sure that students have something to do. There is a correlation between doing and learning. How much a student learns is in direct ratio to how much the student does, or how much involvement there is in what is being done. Stated simply, the more of the five senses a learner uses to learn something, the more effective learning will be. Consider flag-folding as an example.

A student can learn how to fold a flag simply by reading about it. This skill cannot be learned as effectively as it could if, in addition to reading about it, there is someone to explain it. The instruction could go a step further to provide a demonstration of flag-folding. Following it, the student might actually fold the flag. In each step of the instruction, the student uses another sense, adds another dimension, and therefore, learns more. Finally, the student might be asked to teach someone how to fold a flag. In this sequence, the student progressively uses as many senses as can be used in learning to fold a flag.

Participation can make learning permanent. A student who is required to think imaginatively and selectively learns more than one who merely absorbs knowledge passively. A student who learns through the senses of touch, sight, sound, and smell, learns better than if the student learns through one sense alone. If a student reads something then thinks about it, questions it, writes it down, talks about it, and listens to what others say about it, learning is more effective than if one merely reads and stops there. Since participation improves learning, it is

A teacher can encourage students to take notes. The teacher can pose problems and require solutions. The teacher can assign writing, reading, and research projects; form discussion groups and require students to evaluate one another's work. Participation enhances the student's chances of successfully learning the task at hand.

INDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES

We talked about individual differences in chapter 3. Now we shall relate individual differences to the learning process.

A new instructor may be discouraged when it is discovered that a well-planned lesson or training session does not teach all students with equal effectiveness. But the instructor soon realizes that this is a natural and predictable state of affairs. Students seldom learn at the same rate. Differences in rates of learning are based on differences in native intelligence, background, experience, interests, desires to learn, and countless other psychological, emotional, and physical factors. That students are different is a fact that instructors must recognize to determine how much can be taught and at what rate and when.

Since students do not learn at the same rate, it follows that the levels of student understanding are not the same at any given moment. Students do not learn the same thing to the same degree. The teacher must determine the individual levels of understanding, how much each student learns. Otherwise, the teacher cannot know how well the lesson has been taught, whether or not, the job is finished, and what is the next step.

An instructor can measure a student's understanding or mastery of a lesson in several ways. Group discussions and question and answer sessions are generally reliable. Formal or informal tests or quizzes sometimes provide objective assessments. Informal talks or actual performance of the task also indicate a student's progress.

instructor raises the levels of some students without retarding the progress of others. This is a challenge to teaching and a teacher can meet it in a number of ways.

The instructor can plan semi-independent activities in which the trainee works alone or as part of a small group. The instructor is available to give help but only when requested or needed. The trainees work on their own, aware that help is available if needed.

The instructor can provide for supervised study, which requires the instructor to be present and to provide guidance and individual instruction to the trainee. This often reaches students who hesitate to speak out before their co-workers but who feel free to talk with their instructor. A student sometimes has a personal problem that does not concern the study group as a whole, and some students will not air their problems before a group. Supervised study gives these students a chance to deal with their problems privately. By using this method, a teacher often discovers that what a student considers a special or unusual lack of understanding is not special or unusual at all but common to the group.

The teacher can compensate for individual differences through flexible assignments in which the workload is adjusted to the capabilities of individual students. When circumstances permit it, this plan creates an ideal learning situation in which students progress at their own pace. Assigning the same work to every student has its pitfalls. It pushes the poor student beyond capability and fails to offer the capable student a challenge. Through flexible assignments tailored to individual capabilities, the teacher capitalizes on the specialized interests and aptitudes of all students.

The teacher who is not aware that people learn at different rates, that no one lesson has the same effect on everybody, that individual reasons for learning are different, will not be an effective teacher. In a normal learning situation,

abstractions. Or he sometimes has a student who likes experimentation and demonstration for what it proves on the spot rather than for its application to a universal truth. Some students are in a hurry to learn the task or subject matter while others refuse to be rushed. Some are practical and some are impractical. The differences are endless. Yet the teacher must often teach the same lesson to people who differ in many ways and try to achieve the same objective for all.

RETENTION OF LEARNING

This section and the next deal with two related aspects of the learning process: permanency of learning and transfer of learning. In some ways it is difficult to separate the two. Generally, transfer of learning means taking a thing out of its formal learning environment and using it in another situation. Obviously, a person cannot transfer learning to a new situation unless the person remembers it. Therefore, what the instructor does to help a person remember also helps the person to transfer his learning.

THEORIES OF FORGETTING

A discussion of why people forget may point the way to helping them remember. Several theories account for forgetting.

Disuse

It has long been argued that a person forgets those things that are not used. The high school or college graduate is dismayed by the small amount of factual data the student retains several years after graduation. Since the things remembered are those used on the job, the student concludes that forgetting results from disuse. But the explanation is not quite that simple. Experimental studies show, for example, that a hypnotized person can describe specific

Interference

One theory holds that people forget a thing because a certain experience overshadowed it, or that the learning of similar things intervened. This theory may explain how the range of experiences after graduation from school causes a person to forget previously acquired knowledge. In other words, new events displace many things that had been learned. From experiments, two conclusions about interference may be drawn: (1) Closely similar material seems to interfere with memory more than dissimilar material. (2) Material not well learned suffers most from interference.

Repression

In chapter 4 we learned that repression is forgetting due to the submersion of ideas into the unconscious mind. Material that is unpleasant or produces anxiety may be forgotten by a person, but not intentionally. It is subconscious and protective. The repression theory may help explain some cases of forgetting.

Each of these theories implies that when a person forgets something, it is not actually lost; rather, it is unavailable for recall. The instructor's challenge is to make certain the student's learning is always available for recall. The following suggestions can help.

- Teach the subject or skill thoroughly and with meaning to the student. Material thoroughly learned is resistant to forgetting. Experimental studies indicate that meaningful learning builds patterns of relationship in the student's consciousness. Whereas rote learning is superficial and not easily retained, meaningful learning goes deep, because it involves principles and concepts anchored in the student's own experience.

- Help the student develop good study habits. Just as the teacher should teach meaningfully, the student should be encouraged to study for meaning, not just for rote memory. Students should apply themselves toward thorough understanding and proficient skills.

- Help the student to develop a program of review. Short periods of review and opportunities for practice are helpful.

TRANSFER OF LEARNING

During a learning experience, a student may be aided by things learned previously. On the other hand, previous learning sometimes interferes with the current learning task. Consider the learning of two skills, A and B. If the learning of A helps to learn B, positive transfer occurs. If the learning of A hinders the learning of B, negative transfer occurs. For example, the learning of addition probably helps the learning of multiplication; learning how to shoot a bow and arrow may help to learn how to shoot a rifle. But learning to drive an automobile in U.S. traffic may hinder learning to drive in British traffic because Britons drive on the left-hand side of the road. For some people, the study of Spanish first makes it more difficult to learn French. Also, the learning of B may affect the retention or proficiency of A, either positively or negatively. While these processes may help to substantiate the interference theory of forgetting, they are still concerned with the transfer of learning.

Some degree of transfer is involved in practically all learning. Except for certain inherent responses, all new learning is based upon previously learned experience. People interpret new things in terms of what they already know.

each student, what the student's past experience has been, what has already been learned. In planning training sessions, instructors should plan for transfer by organizing the sessions in a meaningful sequence. Each session should help the student to learn what is to follow. Materials should be presented in a sequence that will enhance later and more complex learning.

The cause of the learning transfer process and how it operates have not yet been identified and explained. But no one disputes the fact that transfer does occur. The instructor can help the student to achieve transfer by:

- Planning for transfer as a primary objective. As in all areas of instruction, transfer is more likely to occur if the instructor makes plans to achieve it.

- Making certain that the student understands that what has been learned can be applied in other situations. Prepare the student to seek other applications.

- Ensuring that learning is thorough. Overlearning may sometimes even be appropriate. The more thoroughly the student understands the material, the more likely one is to see its relationship to new situations. Avoid rote learning because it does not foster the transfer of learning.

- Providing meaningful learning experiences that build the student's confidence in one's ability to transfer learning. Provide activities that challenge students and make them exercise their imagination and ingenuity in applying the knowledge and skills they are to learn.

- Using instructional materials that help form valid concepts and generalizations. Use materials that make relationships clear.

- Educating the student to use judgment in applying generalizations.

An attitude can be defined as a feeling, either favorable or unfavorable, toward somebody or something. People form their own general concepts and values and form their own attitudes.

Studies of attitudes in relation to behavior have proved inconclusive. It is uncertain as to whether attitudes determine behavior or vice versa. Generally, people's attitudes tend to persist despite changed circumstances or new evidence. On the other hand, people often do change their attitudes. Many researchers believe that when someone's attitude is changed, it is often the result of following or imitating some model, such as parent, teacher, or supervisor.

Most people who enter the Navy have a good attitude. Your problem is not so much how to improve your people's attitude, but how to maintain the good disposition they already have. When you train or supervise you will want to avoid those aversive situations that turn your people against you, the subject being taught, or the work. Among the things you can avoid are:

- Sarcasm—Caustic language will diminish your chances for gaining cooperation or interest.

- Indifference to the needs of your people—A leader's lack of attention or interest decreases the morale of the work force or trainees.

- Assignment of the most difficult tasks always to the conscientious workers or trainees. They may reach the conclusion they are being exploited because they have ability and work hard.

On the positive side, some of the things you can do to strengthen favorable work and learning attitudes by your people are:

- Encouraging their participation—Encourage them to contribute their ideas and to personally identify with the subject at hand.

- Giving credit for achievement- Acknowledge the attainment warmly when your people learn new skills. It may have seemed simple to you but may have been a real challenge to them.

- Challenging their motivation to learn new tasks and to perform new tasks efficiently- For example, inform your people about how their jobs relate to the mission's goal.

- Gaining their confidence- Take a personal interest in them. Be friendly, helpful, and fair in your dealings with them.

SUMMARY

Simply stated, try to build into the work and learning environment those stimuli that will foster favorable attitudes toward learning, and try to eliminate those stimuli that will generate unfavorable attitudes toward learning.

This chapter is no more than an entry-level look in the file of educational psychology in the area of learning.

Learning causes a change in behavior as a result of the learned experience. Learning is purposeful and comes only through experience. Learning is multifaced; the learner's full set of learning equipment is always involved- thinking, feelings, emotions, etc. Learning is an active process.

In instructing, the teacher should use teaching methods appropriate to what is to be taught. You may want to use the lecture approach, group discussion, or on-the-job training depending on what you must teach your

people. The learning of concepts and generalizations depends on a broad range of student experience and careful guidance by the teacher.

The laws of learning provide useful insights into the learning process. The law of effect is especially significant it states that learning is strengthened when it is accompanied by satisfying or pleasurable conditions.

A knowledge of the laws of learning helps the teacher to understand and to use three factors that affect learning: motivation, participation, and individual differences. The student must have a need to know, understand, or acquire a skill. All these needs, which make up motivation, are inseparable from the personal-social needs of the student. A student learns best when actively involved, when there is participation. When purposeful activity is associated with learning, it makes the learning more permanent. Students learn at different rates because of differences in experience; background; intelligence; interests; desire to learn; and psychological, emotional, and physical factors. The teacher must recognize these individual differences and gear teaching to reach all students, whatever their capabilities and abilities.

The central questions in education deal with retention of learning and transfer of learning. Disuse, interference, and repression may account for forgetting. Transfer of learning is involved either when the learning of one task affects another or when the learner adapts what is learned for use in new situations. The key to both is thorough learning of the essential concepts and generalizations. This leads to meaningful learning anchored in the student's experiences.

APPENDIX I

SUGGESTED READINGS

Chapter 1, Why People Behave The Way They Do, and Chapter 2, Influencing Human Behavior

Applewhite, Philip B. Organizational Behavior, Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1965.

Argyle, Michael. The Social Psychology of Work, NY: Taplinger, 1972.

Argyris, Chris. Integrating the Individual and the Organization. NY: Wiley, 1964.

Argyris, Chris. Intervention Theory and Method: A Behavioral Science View. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley, 1970.

Arlum, William and Dobrofsky, Lynne R. "Military Socialization and Masculinity." Journal of Social Issues. 1978 Vol. 34(1) 151-168.

Baer, Earl R. The Sensitive I: People in Business. NY: Wiley, 1975.

Barker, Roger G. and Bindra, Dallis. Intelligent Behavior, NY: Wiley, 1976.

Berrien, F. K. and Bash, Wendell H. Human Relations: Comments and Cases. NY: Harper & Bros., 1957.

Boshear, Walton C. and Albrecht, Karl G. Understanding People: Models and Concepts. La Jolla, CA: University Association, 1977.

Carnegie, Dale. How to Win Friends and Influence People. NY: Simon and Schuster, 1936.

Drake, Richard Ivan and Smith, Peter J. Behavioral Science in Industry. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1973.

Ekstrand, Lars. "Bilingual and Bicultural Adaptations" Educational and Psychological Interactions, No. 66 (Mar 1978) 72.

Gellerman, Saul W. Motivation and Productivity. NY: American Management Association, Inc., 1963.

Gellerman, Saul W. Management by Motivation. NY: American Management Association, Inc., 1968.

Gilmer, Beverly Von Haller. Applied Psychology: Problems in Living and Working. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1967.

Herzberg, Frederick. "One More Time: How Do You Motivate Employees?" Harvard Business Review, Vol. 46 (January-February 1968) 53-62.

Herzberg, Frederick. "Managers or Animal Trainers?" Management Review, Vol. 60 (July 1971), 2-16.

Herzberg, Frederick. Work and the Nature of Man. Cleveland: World Publishing Co., 1966.

Herzberg, Frederick. The Motivation to Work. NY: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1962.

Haggart, Richard. On Culture and Communication. NY: Oxford University Press, 1972.

Ingalls, John D. Human Energy: The Critical Factor for Individuals and Organizations. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publication Co., 1976.

Kaluger, George. Psychology and Sociology: An Integrated Approach to Understanding Human Behavior. St. Louis, MO: C.V. Mosky Co., 1969.

Lasswell, Harold D. Power and Personality. NY: Viking Press, 1967.

Lifton, Robert Jay. History and Human Survival. NY: Random House, 1970.

Lifton, Robert Jay. The Life of Self: Toward a New Psychology. NY: Simon and Schuster, 1976.

McClelland, David C. The Achieving Society. NY: Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., 1961.

McGregor, Douglas. The Human Side of Enterprise. NY: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1960.

Mahrer, Alvin R. Experiencing: A Humanistic Theory of Psychology and Psychiatry. NY: Brunner/Mazel, 1978.

Maslow, A. H. Motivation and Personality. NY: Harper & Bros., 1954.

Meyer, Merle E. (ed.). Foundations of Contemporary Psychology. NY: Oxford University Press, 1979.

Mitchell, Thomas B. People in Organizations: Understanding Their

Management Application, 1969.

Nebylitsyn, V. D. and Gray, J. A. (eds.). Biological Bases of Individual Behavior. NY: Academic Press, 1972.

Odiorno, George S. How Managers Make Things Happen. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1961.

Quick, Thomas L. Understanding People at Work: A Manager's Guide to the Behavioral Sciences. NY: Executive Enterprises Publications, 1976.

Rausch, Erwin. Balancing Needs of People and Organizations: The Linking Elements Concept. Washington, DC: Bureau of National Affairs, 1978.

Rohrer, Hibler, and Replogle. Managers For Tomorrow. NY: The New American Library, 1965.

Roy, Robert H. The Cultures of Management. Johns Hopkins University Press, 1977.

Sibler, Mark B. "Motivation Release From Within," Defense Management Journal, Vol. VII (Spring-1971), 9-14.

Skinner, B. F. Beyond Freedom and Dignity. NY: Alfred A. Knopf, 1971.

Stewart, Nathaniel. The Effective Woman Manager: Seven Vital Skills for Upward Mobility. NY: Wiley, 1978.

Sussman, Gerald I. Autonomy at Work. NY: Praeger, 1976.

Sutermeister, Robert A. People and Productivity. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1969.

Taylor, Frederick W. Principles of Scientific Management. NY: Harper & Bros., 1915.

Chapter 3, Perception

Allport, Floyd Henry. Theories of Perception and the Concept of Structure. NY: Wiley, 1955.

Argyris, Chris. Personality and Organization. NY: Harper & Row, 1970.

Blake, Robert Rogers and Ramsey, Glenn V. Perception, an Approach to Personality. NY: Ronald Press Co., 1951.

Dember, William Norton and Joels, Warn. Psychology of Perception. NY: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1979.

Gibson, Eleanor. Principles of Perceptual Learning and Development. NY: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1969.

Goffman, W. The Presentation of Self in Every Day Life. Garden City, NY: Doubleday, 1959.

Goodman, George J. W. Powers of Mind. Random House, 1975.

Kaufman, Lloyd. Perception: The World Transformed. NY: Oxford University Press, 1979.

McBurney, Donald. Introduction to Sensation/Perception. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1977.

Miller, George Armitage. Language and Perception. Cambridge, MA: Belknap Press of Harvard University, 1976.

Repp, William. "Motivating The NOW Generation," Personnel Journal, Vol. 50 (July 1971), 540-543.

Ruch, Floyd L. Psychology and Life. Chicago, IL: Scott, Foresman & Co., 1971.

Sartain, North, Strange, and Chapman. Psychology: Understanding Human Behavior. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1962.

Savage, C. Wade. The Management of Sensation: A Critique of Perceptual Psychophysics. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press, 1970.

Sutermester, Robert A. People and Productivity. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1969.

Tagiuri R. and Petrullo, L. (eds.). Person Perception and Interpersonal Behavior. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1958.

Thurstone, Louis Leon. The Nature of Intelligence. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1973.

Wermuth, Anthony L. "Youth Wants to No!" U. S. Naval Institute Proceedings, Vol. 98 (July 1972), 50-55.

Chapter 4, People Under Stress

Bellows, Roger. Creative Leadership. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1959.

Carroll, Stephen J. and Tosi, Henry L. Organizational Behavior. Chicago, IL: St. Clair Press, 1977.

Davis, Arthur M. Social Psychology. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1962.

Friedman, Myles. Rational Behavior. Columbia, SC: University of South Carolina Press, 1975.

Gellerman, Saul W. Management of Human Relations. NY: Holt, 1966.

Goldman, Alvin I. A Theory of Human Action. Englewood Cliffs, NY: Prentice-Hall, 1970.

Hunt, J. McV. Personality and the Behavior Disorders. NY: Ronald Press Co., 1944.

Leavitt, Harold J. Managerial Psychology. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1964.

Ruch, Floyd L. Psychology and Life. Chicago, IL: Scott, Foresman & Co., 1971.

Sartain, North, Strange, and Chapman. Psychology: Understanding Human Behavior. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1962.

Sheehan, N. The Arnheiter Affair. NY: Random House, 1971.

Warshaw, Leon J. Managing Stress. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publication Co., 1979.

Chapter 5, Person to Person Communication

Andersen, Kenneth E. Introduction to Communication Theory and Practice. Menlo Park, CA: Cummings Publishing Co., 1972.

Adizes, Jehako. How to Solve the Mismanagement Crisis. Homewood, IL: Dow Jones-Irwin, 1979.

Barker, Larry Lee. Communication Vibrations. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1974.

Bennett, Dudley. TA and the Manager. NY: AMACOM, 1976.

Berlo, David K. The Process of Communication. NY: Holt, Rinehart, Winston, 1960.

Bilmes, Jack. "Meaning and Interpretation." *Semiotica*, 1976 Vol. 16(2) 115-128.

Diekman, John R. Get Your Message Across: How to Improve Communication. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1979.

Haney, William V. Communication and Organizational Behavior. Homewood, IL: Irwin, 1967.

Hopper, Robert and Whitehead, Jack L. Communications Concepts and Skills. NY: Harper and Row, 1979.

Howell, Richard W. and Vetler, Harold J. Language in Behavior. NY: Human Sciences Press, 1976.

Johnson, Terry. "The Barriers," Direction (February 1972) 3-5.

Jongeward, Dorothy and Seyer, Philip C. Choosing Success: Transactional Analysis on the Job. NY: Wiley, 1978.

Leavitt, Harold J. Managerial Psychology. Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press, 1964.

Likert, Rensis. New Patterns of Management. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1961.

Meyer, G. Dale. Participative Decision Making. Iowa City, IA: Center for Labor and Management, University of Iowa, 1970.

Millar, Dan P. and Millar, Frank E. Messages and Myths: Understanding Interpersonal Communication. Port Washington, NY: Alfred Publishing Co., 1976.

Miller, Lawrence M. Behavior Management: The New Science of Managing People at Work. NY: Wiley, 1978.

Montagn, Ashley and Matson, Floyd. The Human Connection. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1979.

Nirenberg, Jesse S. Getting Through to People. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1963.

Roodman, Herman S. and Roodman, Zelda. Management by Communication. Toronto: Methuen Publications, 1973.

Sheinkin, David. Self Understanding: An Introduction to Transactional Analysis. Ann Arbor, MI: Ann Arbor Publishers, 1971.

Sutermeister, Robert A. People and Productivity. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1969.

Sylwester, Oscar L. and Kingsley, Earl J. "Communication," USAF Instructors Manual, Vol. VIII (Winter 1970-71) 38-42.

Tannenbaum, Robert & others. Leadership and Organization: A Behavioral Science Approach. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1961.

This, Leslie. "The Leader Looks at Personal Communication." Looking

Apply, Lawrence Asa. Formula for Success: A Corp Concept of Management. NY: AMACOM, 1974.

Bass, Bernard M. and Barrett, Gerald V. Man, Work and Organization: An Introduction to Industrial and Organizational Psychology. Boston, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1972.

Beckhard, Richard. "The Leader Looks at the Consultative Process," Looking Into Leadership. Executive Library, Leadership Resources, Inc., Washington, DC, 1966.

Behling, Orlando. Organizational Behavior: Theory, Research and Application. Boston, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1976.

Blake, Robert Rogers and Mouton, Jane Srugley. The New Managerial Grid. Houston, TX: Gulf Publishing Co. Book Division, 1978.

Blansfield, Warren G. "The Leader Looks at the Appraisal of Personnel," Looking Into Leadership, Executive Library, Leadership Resources, Inc., Washington, DC, 1966.

Brown, Paul L. and Presbie, Robert J. Behavior Modification in Business, Industry and Government. New Paltze, NY: Behavior Improvement Associates, 1976.

Buchele, Robert B. The Management of Business and Public Organizations. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1977.

Carlisle, Howard M. Situational Management: A Contingency Approach to Leadership. NY: AMACOM, 1973.

Centanni, Ronald P. "Effective Counseling," USAF Instructors Journal, Vol. VIII (Winter 1970-71) 43-45.

Daniel, William Wentworth and McIntosh, Neil. The Right to Manage: A Study of Leadership and Reform in Employee Relationship. London: Macdonald and Co., 1972.

Doctoroff, Michael. Syneigistic Management: Creating the Climate for Superior Performance. NY: AMACOM, 1977.

Drucker, Peter. The Practice of Management. NY: Harper, 1954.

Drucker, Peter. Managing for Results. NY: Harper, 1964.

Finch, Frederic E., Jones, Halsey N. and Litterer, Joseph A. Managing for Organizational Effectiveness: An Experimental Approach. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1976.

Granger, Charles H. "How to Set Company Objectives," *Management Review*, Vol. 59 (July 1970), 2-8.

Humble, John Williams. *How to Manage By Objectives*. NY: AMACOM, 1973.

Humble, John Williams. *Management by Objectives*. London, NY: McGraw-Hill, 1970.

Janowitz, Morris (ed.). *The New Military: Changing Patterns of Organization*. NY: Russell Sage Foundation, 1964.

Kast, Fremont Ellsworth and Rosenzweig, James E. *Organization and Management: A Systems Approach*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1974.

Koontz, Harold and O'Donnell, Cyril. *Principles of Management: An Analysis of Managerial Functions*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1959.

Landy, Frank J. and Trumbo, Don A. *Psychology of Work Behavior*. Homewood, IL: Dorsey Press, 1976.

Likert, Rensis. *New Patterns of Management*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1960.

Maier, N. R. F. *The Appraisal Interview: Objectives, Methods, and Skill*. NY: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1958.

Myers, Marion Scott. *Every Employee a Manager: More Meaningful Work Through Job Enrichment*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1970.

Odiorne, George S. *Management by Objectives: A System of Managerial Leadership*. NY: Pitman Publishing Corp., 1965.

Reddin, William J. *Effective Management by Objectives*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1971.

Reitz, H. Joseph. *Behavior in Organizations*. Homewood, IL: R. D. Irwin, 1977.

Silber, Mark B. "Motivation Release From Within," *Defense Management Journal*, (Spring 1971) 9-14.

Vroom, Victor Harold. *Work and Motivation*. NY: Wiley, 1964.

Whyte, William H. *The Organization Man*. NY: Doubleday, 1956.

Chapter 7, The Leader and The Group

Albanese, Robert. *Management Toward Accountability for Performance*. Homewood, IL: R. D. Irwin, 1975.

Bowers, David G. *Systems of Organization: Management of the Human Resource*. Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan Press, 1976.

Bradford, J. Allyn and Guberman, Reuben. TA. *Now I've Got You... in Business*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1978.

Cartwright, D. and Zander, A. (eds.). *Group Dynamics*, 2nd edition; Evanston, IL: Row, Peterson, & Co., 1960.

Cascio, Wayne F. *Applied Psychology in Personnel Management*. Reston, VA: Reston Publishing Co., 1978.

Drucker, Peter Ferdinand. *An Introductory View of Management*. NY: Harper's College Press, 1977.

Drucker, Peter Ferdinand. *Management Responsibilities, Practices*. NY: Harper and Row, 1975.

Ends, Earl J. and Page, Curtis W. *Organizational Team Building*. Cambridge, MA: Winthrop Publishers, 1977.

Fiedler, Fred Edward and McChemers, Martin. *Leadership and Effective Management*. Glenview, IL: Scott, Foresman, 1974.

Gorble, Frank G. *Excellence in Leadership*. NY: American Management Association, 1972.

Hare, A. Paul, Bales, R. F., and Borgatta, E. F. (eds.). *Small Groups*. NY: Alfred A. Knopf, 1955.

Homans, C. C. *The Human Group*. NY: Harcourt, Brace, & Co., 1950.

Hunt, Raymond George. *Interpersonal Strategies for System Management*. Monterey, CA: Brooks/Cole Publishing Co., 1974.

Johnson, David W. and Johnson, Frank P. *Joining Together: Group Theory and Group Skills*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1975.

Kolasa, Blair John. *Introduction to Behavioral Science for Business*. NY: Wiley, 1969.

Krasner, Leonard. *Behavior Influence and Personality: The Social Matrix of Human Action*. NY: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1973.

Leavitt, Harold J. *Managerial Psychology*. Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press, 1964.

Likert, Rensis. *New Patterns of Management*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1961.

Lippitt, Gordon L. and Seashore, Edith W. Looking into Leadership. Washington, DC: Leadership Resources, Inc., 1966.

Masterson, Thomas R. and Mara, Thomas G. Motivating the Underperformer. NY: American Management Association General Management Division, 1969.

Minnick, Wayne C. The Art of Persuasion. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin, 1968.

Newcomb, Theodore M. Social Psychology. NY: Henry Holt & Co., Inc., 1958.

Schein, Edgar H. Organizational Psychology. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1965.

Shepherd, Clovis R. Small Groups—Some Sociological Perspectives. Scranton, PA: Chandler Publishing Co., 1964.

Sherif, M. (ed.). Intergroup Relations and Leadership. NY: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1962.

Sutcliffe, Robert A. People and Productivity. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1969.

Thelan, Herbert A. The Dynamics of Groups at Work. Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press, 1954.

Tiger, Lionel. Men in Groups. NY: Vintage Book, 1970.

Yarmolinski, A. The Military Establishment: Its Impacts on American Society. NY: Harper & Row, 1971.

Zander, Alvin Frederick. Groups at Work. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass, 1977.

Chapter 8, Problem-solving and Decision-making

Anthony, William P. Participative Management. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1978.

Brethower, Dale M. Behavioral Analysis in Business and Industry: A Total Performance System. Kalamazoo, MI: Behaviordelia, Inc., 1976.

Carnarius, Stanley E. Management Problems and Solutions: A Guide to Problem Solving. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 1976.

Drucker, Peter. The Effective Executive. NY: Harper & Row, 1967.

MA: Houghton Mifflin, 1975.

Leavitt, Harold J. *Managerial Psychology*. Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press, 1964.

Likert, Rensis. *New Patterns of Management*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1961.

Mager, Robert F. and Pipe, Peter. *Analyzing Performance Problems*. Belmont, CA: Fearson Publishers, 1970.

Rohrer, Hilber, & Replogle. *Managers for Tomorrow*. NY: The New American Library, 1965.

Sartain, North, Strange, and Chapman. *Psychology: Understanding Human Behavior*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1962.

Chapter 9, Teaching and Learning

Bruner, J. S., Goodnow, J. J., and Austin, G. A. *A Study of Thinking*. NY: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1956.

Cannon, H. Gabriel. "Methods in Teaching." *Philippine Journal of Mental Health*, 1974 (Jul-Dec) Vol. 5(2) 100-109.

Hilgard, E. R. *Theories of Learning*. NY: Appleton-Century, 1956.

Kazdin, Alan E. *Behavior Modification in Applied Settings*. Homewood, IL: Dorsey Press, 1975.

Klausmeier, Herbert J. and Goodwin, William. *Learning and Human Abilities—Educational Psychology*. NY: Harper & Row, 1961.

Mager, Robert F. *Developing Attitude Toward Learning*. Palo Alto, CA: Fearon Publishers, 1968.

Sartain, North, Strange, and Chapman. *Psychology: Understanding Human Behavior*. NY: McGraw-Hill, 1962.

Staats, Arthur W. and Staats, Carolyn K. *Complex Human Behavior: A Systematic Extension of Learning Principles*. NY: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1966.

Wertheimer, Max. *Productive Thinking*. NY: Harper & Bros., 1945.

INDEX

A

Aggression, reactions to stress situations,
4-7 to 4-8
 apathy, 4-8
 scapegoating, 4-8

B

Basic assumptions about a person's will to work,
2-3 to 2-4
Behavior is caused, 1-1
Behavior is complex, 1-2 to 1-4
Behavior is directed to achieve a goal, 1-1 to 1-2

C

Classes of human needs, 1-6 to 1-10
 ego needs, 1-9
 security needs, 1-8
 security motivated leader, 1-8
 self-fulfillment and growth needs, 1-10
 self-fulfillment motivated leader,
 1-11 to 1-13
 social needs, 1-9
 socially motivated leader, 1-9
 survival needs, 1-6
Communication, use of, 5-6, 5-7
 one-way, 5-6
 two-way, 5-7
Compensation, reactions to stress situations, 4-9
Conflict, types of, 4-2 to 4-5
 attractive and unattractive courses of action,
 4-2
 equally attractive courses of action, 4-3
 equally unattractive courses of action, 4-3
 frustration, 4-3 to 4-5

D

Decision-making, eight steps, 8-2 to 8-7
 how well has the decision worked out in
 practice? If it failed, what alternative
 can be taken?, 8-6
 nature of the problem—problems and the
 priority they assume, 8-4
 the need for a decision—is there a problem?,
 8-3
 what are the alternative courses of action?,
 8-4
 what is the plan of action and schedule for
 carrying out the decision?, 8-5
 what is the situation?, 8-3
 what will be the consequences?, 8-5
 which alternative is to be chosen?, 8-5

E

Effective groups are potent groups, 7-8 to 7-14
Ego needs, 1-9
Escape, reactions to stress situations, 4-8
Esteem and self-growth, recognize a person's
 needs, 2-7 to 2-8
 enrich a person's job, 2-7 to 2-8

F

Fear of another's tendency to judge, 5-8
Fear of disapproval, 5-8
Fear of displaying ignorance, 5-8
Fear of losing status, 5-8
Feedback, giving, communication, 5-10 to 5-12
Feeling of pride in the job, 2-3
Feelings and attitudes, message, 5-4
Fixation, reaction to stress situation, 4-11

- Group membership, rewards, 7-2 to 7-4
 - a definite, structured, satisfying relation with fellow members, 7-3
 - accomplishing an objective through group action, 7-4
 - status because of the group, 7-3
 - status within the group, 7-3
- Group unity, strive for, 7-15
- Group, what is it?, 7-1 to 7-4
- Groups, effective groups are potent groups, 7-8 to 7-14

H

- Human behavior differs, why?, 1-4 to 1-6
 - a person's culture influences behavior, 1-4
 - a person's immediate situation influences personal behavior, 1-4
 - individual differences influence behavior, 1-5 to 1-6

I

- Illusion, perceptual, 3-1 to 3-2
- Improving your perceptions, 3-8 to 3-19
 - ask questions that produce the facts, 3-13 to 3-15
 - break big questions into smaller ones, 3-14
 - watch your abstract questions, 3-15
 - watch your "why" questions, 3-13
 - cultivate a readiness for change, 3-13
 - cultivate objectivity, 3-11 to 3-13
 - be wary of generalizations, 3-13
 - objectivity and the defense of the ego, 3-12
 - empathy, 3-9
 - judge people accurately, 3-16 to 3-19
 - learn to use classifications, 3-15
 - recognize evidence or facts, 3-9 to 3-10
 - facts and abstractions, 3-10
 - facts and opinions, 3-10

- dangers of manipulation, 2-9
 - rewards are more effective than fear, 2-9
 - use negative incentives with care, 2-8
 - what it takes to be motivated, 2-9 to 2-10
- Increasing the drive to do the job, 2-6 to 2-7
- Individual's relation to the group, 7-4 to 7-8
 - identification with the group, 7-4 to 7-6
 - participation in the group, 7-8
 - position within the group, 7-7
 - status because of the group, 7-7
 - status within the group, 7-6
- Influencing human behavior, 2-1 to 2-11
 - basic assumptions about a person's will to work, 2-3 to 2-4
 - under proper conditions, a person will generally seek, 2-3 to 2-4
 - how man's basic needs influence, 2-1 to 2-2
 - a higher need is generated as the lower need is satisfied, 2-1
 - a satisfied need ceases to influence behavior, 2-1
 - man's higher needs for esteem and self-fulfillment are never completely satisfied, 2-2
 - people may behave in different ways to satisfy the same need, 2-2
 - incentives to performance, 2-8 to 2-10
 - use negative incentives with care, 2-8 to 2-10
 - increasing the drive to do the job, 2-6 to 2-7
 - individual's needs on the job, 2-3
 - many of the worker's survival and security needs are met on the job, 2-3
 - needs for esteem, status, and self-growth motivate a worker's behavior, 2-3
 - leader looks beyond a person's overt behavior to determine the basic need, 2-2
 - recognize a person's needs for esteem and self growth, 2-7 to 2-8
 - enrich a person's job, 2-7 to 2-8
 - why a leader values a motivated worker, 2-11
 - will to work comes from within, 2-4 to 2-6
 - external work factors prevent some worker dissatisfaction, 2-4
 - job content can provide worker satisfaction and motivation, 2-5 to 2-6
- Intense motivation, 4-13 to 4-14
 - process of intense reaction, 4-13 to 4-14

Job responsibilities, 2-3

L

Leader and the group, 7-1 to 7-16

effective groups are potent groups,
7-8 to 7-14

benefits of group solidarity and esprit
de corps, 7-13

create a secure and satisfying social
structure, 7-9 to 7-10

create concrete, near-at-hand goals,
7-13

create realistically challenging goals,
7-12

give your people status within the
group, 7-10

make your people proud of their
group, 7-11

individual's relation to the group, 7-4 to 7-8
identification with the group,
7-4 to 7-6

participation in the group, 7-8

position within the group, 7-7

status because of the group, 7-7

status within the group, 7-6

what is a group?, 7-1 to 7-4

rewards of group membership,
7-2 to 7-4

your relation to the group, 7-14 to 7-16

help the group to achieve its goal, 7-15

know your people, 7-15 to 7-16

strive for group unity, 7-15

when change is necessary, 7-14

Learning, characteristics, 9-1 to 9-3

active process, 9-3

multifaced, 9-2

purposeful, 9-1

through experience, 9-2

Learning concepts to the learning situation, 9-6

Learning, major "laws" of, 9-7 to 9-11

factors that affect learning motivation, 9-9

individual differences, 9-10 to 9-11

law of effect, 9-8

law of exercise, 9-8

law of intensity, 9-8

law of readiness, 9-7

law of recency, 9-9

participation, 9-9

Learning skills, 9-3 to 9-5

application of skill is the final learning
criterion, 9-5

desire to learn affects learning, 9-3

duration and organization of the lessor
affect learning, 9-5

evaluation of a trainee's progress aids
learning, 9-5

knowledge of results aids learning, 9-4

performing the skill aids learning, 9-4

physical skills involve more than muscles,
9-3

progress follows a pattern, 9-4

providing patterns to follow aids learning,
9-4

Listening, 5-12 to 5-13

good habits, 5-12

be mentally agile, 5-13

control the emotions, 5-13

get ready to listen, 5-12

listen to understand rather than to
refute, 5-12

take responsibility for comprehending,
5-13

M

Making the decision, 8-1

Management by objectives, 6-2 to 6-7

establishing management by objectives,
6-2 to 6-7

nature of management by objectives, 6-2

Management of conflict and frustration, 4-14

channeling efforts toward productivity,
4-15

maintaining open communications, 4-15

positive approaches by the leader, 4-14

Manager, basic resources of a, 6-1

Mastery of the job, 2-3

Matching the individual's goals with organization
goals, 6-1 to 6-2

Mental sickness, reaction to stress situations,
4-12 to 4-13

Nature of conflict, 4-1 to 4-5
 types of, 4-2 to 4-5

Nature of perception or the way we see things,
 3-2 to 3-8
 effects of variances in perception, 3-6
 making sense out of the outer world,
 3-2 to 3-5
 external factors affect our perception,
 3-4
 our culture influences our perceptions,
 3-5
 personal factors affect perception,
 3-2 to 3-4
 our perceptions sometimes distort reality,
 3-6 to 3-8
 erroneous perspectives, 3-8
 expectations, 3-7
 "filling-in" missing facts, 3-8
 "halo" effect, 3-8
 illusions, 3-7
 stereotypes, 3-8
 the way we like to see things, 3-5 to 3-6
 emphasizing the desirable and pleasant
 things, 3-5
 making the outer world coincide with
 our needs and desires, 3-5
 screening out undesirable or unpleasant
 things, 3-5

Needs on the job, individual, 2-3

O

Objectives, benefits of, 6-1

P

Paralysis, reaction to stress situations, 4-11

People under stress, 4-1 to 4-15
 intense motivation, 4-13
 process of intense reaction,
 4-13 to 4-14

People under stress Continued
 management of conflict and frustration,
 4-14
 channeling efforts toward productivity,
 4-15
 maintaining open communications,
 4-15
 positive approaches by the leader, 4-14

nature of conflict, 4-1 to 4-5
 types of conflict, 4-2 to 4-5

reactions to stress situations, 4-5 to 4-13
 aggression, 4-7
 compensation, 4-9
 escape, 4-8
 fixation, 4-11
 mental sickness, 4-12 to 4-13
 paralysis, 4-11
 projection-sometimes, 4-9
 rationalization, 4-9
 regression, 4-10
 repression, 4-10

Perception, 3-1 to 3-34
 illusion, 3-1 to 3-2
 improving your perceptions, 3-8 to 3-19
 ask questions that produce the facts,
 3-13 to 3-15
 cultivate a readiness for change, 3-13
 cultivating objectivity, 3-11 to 3-13
 empathy, 3-9
 judge people accurately, 3-16 to 3-19
 learn to use classifications, 3-15
 recognize evidence or facts, 3-9 to 3-10

nature of perception or the way we see
 things, 3-2 to 3-8
 effects of variances in perception, 3-6
 making sense out of the outer world,
 3-2 to 3-5
 our perceptions sometimes distort
 reality, 3-6 to 3-8
 the way we like to see things, 3-5

recognizing the individual, 3-19 to 3-34
 individual differences, 3-19 to 3-31
 perceiving oneself, 3-32 to 3-34

Person and the job, the, 6-1 to 6-7
 basic resources of a manager, 6-1
 benefits of objectives, 6-1
 management by objectives, 6-2 to 6-7
 establishing management by objectives,
 6-2 to 6-7
 nature of management by objectives,
 6-2

Person to person communication, 5-1 to 5-19

barriers to two-way communication,
5-7 to 5-8

fear of another's tendency to judge,
5-8

fear of displaying ignorance, 5-8

fear of disapproval, 5-8

fear of losing status, 5-8

communications influence interpersonal
relationships, 5-2

giving feedback, 5-10 to 5-12

feedback should help the receiver, 5-10

receiver must be able to do something
about the message, 5-11 to 5-12

receiver must be willing and able to
accept my message, 5-11

receiver must understand what I am
saying, 5-10

how people communicate, 5-5

overcoming barriers to two-way communica-
tion, 5-8 to 5-10

build a supportive relationship with
your people, 5-9

build an atmosphere of mutual trust
and confidence, 5-9

try to understand the other person's
needs and point of view, 5-10

theory and definitions, 5-14 to 5-19

adult ego state, 5-16

child ego state, 5-15

parent ego state, 5-14

using transactional analysis, 5-17

transactional analysis, 5-13

use of the one-way method of communica-
tion, 5-6

use of the two-way method of communica-
tion, 5-7

what is effective person to person com-
munication?, 5-1 to 5-2

listener decodes the message, 5-2

sender makes sure the receiver correctly
understands the message, 5-2

sender transmits a message, 5-1

feelings and attitudes, 5-4

"noise" or things that interfere with
transmission, 5-5

words, 5-3

what is listening?, 5-12 to 5-13

forming good listening habits,
5-12 to 5-13

Problem-solving and decision-making, 8-1 to 8-7

eight steps of decision-making, 8-2 to 8-7

implementing the decision, 8-7

making the decision, 8-1

understanding the problem, 8-1

Professional growth in work, 2-3

Projection-sometimes, reaction to stress situa-
tions, 4-9

R

Reactions to stress situations, 4-5 to 4-13

aggression, 4-7 to 4-8

compensation, 4-9

escape, 4-8

fixation, 4-11

mental sickness, 4-12 to 4-13

paralysis, 4-11

projection-sometimes, 4-9

rationalization, 4-9

regression, 4-10

repression, 4-10

Rationalization, reactions to stress situations,
4-9

Recognition for a job well-done, 2-3 to 2-4

Recognizing the individual, 3-19 to 3-34

individual differences, 3-19 to 3-31

age differences, 3-27

consistent individual differences, 3-22

definitions of terms: performance,
ability, aptitude, achievement, 3-23

differences in motor and sensory
functions, 3-22

distribution of individual differences,
3-20 to 3-22

generation-value gap, 3-27 to 3-31

individual differences in performance,
3-23

individual differences in personality
traits, 3-26

- individual differences—Continued
- intelligence and achievement, 3-24
- intelligence and jobs, 3-26
- primary abilities, 3-25
- perceiving oneself, 3-32 to 3-34
- Regression, reaction to stress situations, 4-10
- Repression, reaction to stress situations, 4-10
- Retention of learning, 9-11 to 9-12
 - theories of forgetting, 9-11 to 9-12
 - disuse, 9-11
 - interference, 9-12
 - repression, 9-12

S

- Security needs, 1-8
- Self-fulfillment and growth needs, 1-10
- Social needs, 1-9
- Survival needs, 1-6

T

- Teaching and learning, 9-1 to 9-14
 - building attitudes toward learning and the job, 9-13 to 9-14
 - characteristics of learning, 9-1 to 9-3
 - learning comes through experience, 9-2
 - learning is an active process, 9-3
 - learning is multifaceted, 9-2
 - learning is purposeful, 9-1
 - kinds of learning: the basis for method, 9-3 to 9-5
 - learning skills, 9-3 to 9-5
 - learning concepts and generalizations, 9-5 to 9-7
 - relating concepts to the learning situation, 9-6
 - relating generalizations to the learning situation, 9-6 to 9-7
 - major "laws" of learning, 9-7 to 9-11
 - factors that affect learning motivation, 9-9
 - individual differences, 9-10 to 9-11
 - law of effect, 9-8
 - law of exercise, 9-8
 - law of intensity, 9-8
 - law of primacy, 9-8
 - law of readiness, 9-7
 - law of recency, 9-9
 - participation, 9-9

- retention of learning, 9-11 to 9-12
- theories of forgetting, 9-11 to 9-12
- transfer of learning, 9-12 to 9-13
- what is learning?, 9-1

- Theory and definitions, communication, 5-14 to 5-19

- adult ego state, 5-16
- child ego state, 5-15
- parent ego state, 5-14
- using transactional analysis, 5-17 to 5-19

- Transactional analysis, communication, 5-13

- Transfer of learning, 9-12 to 9-13

- Two-way communication, 5-7 to 5-10

- barriers, 5-7 to 5-8
- overcoming barriers, 5-8 to 5-10

U

- Understanding the problem, 8-1

W

- Why people behave the way they do, 1-1 to 1-14
 - behavior is caused, 1-1
 - behavior is complex, 1-2 to 1-4
 - behavior is directed to achieve a goal, 1-1 to 1-2
 - classes of human needs, 1-6 to 1-10
 - ego needs, 1-9
 - security needs, 1-8
 - self-fulfillment and growth needs, 1-10
 - social needs, 1-9
 - summary, 1-13 to 1-14
 - survival needs, 1-6
 - why human behavior differs, 1-4 to 1-6
 - a person's culture influences behavior, 1-4
 - a person's immediate situation influences personal behavior, 1-4
 - individual differences influence behavior, 1-5 to 1-6

- Will to work comes from within, 2-4 to 2-6